

# **speakout** 2ND EDITION

## Discover English as it is really spoken

**Speakout 2nd Edition** is a comprehensive six-level general English course for adults that has been developed in association with **BBC Worldwide** and **BBC Learning English**. The course integrates authentic video from popular BBC programmes into every unit and builds the skills and knowledge learners need to express themselves confidently in a real English-speaking environment.

The **Speakout 2nd Edition** Workbook contains a wide variety of practice exercises that review all the language areas covered in the Students' Book:


- Grammar, vocabulary and functional language exercises help to consolidate and extend new language
- Extra practice in reading, writing and listening extends learners' skills
- Regular review sections reinforce key language and allow learners to check their progress

## Components

- Students' Book with DVD-ROM
- Students' Book with DVD-ROM and MyEnglishLab
- Class Audio CDs
- Workbook with Audio (with and without key)
- Teacher's Book with Resource and Assessment Disc
- ActiveTeach

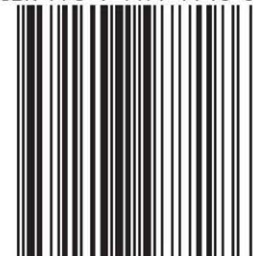
Students' online video and audio resources at:

**[www.english.com/speakout](http://www.english.com/speakout)**

GSE 	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90
Advanced									
Upper Intermediate									
Intermediate									
Pre-intermediate									
Elementary									
Starter									
CEFR	<A1	A1	A2 +	B1 +	B2 +	C1	C2		

Learn about the Global Scale of English at [www.english.com/gse](http://www.english.com/gse)

ISBN 978-1-4479-7718-6



[www.pardistalk.ir/library](http://www.pardistalk.ir/library)

2ND EDITION

Frances Eales • Steve Oakes • Louis Harrison

## Upper Intermediate Workbook

with key

GLOBAL SCALE  
of English



PEARSON

**Pearson Education Limited**

Edinburgh Gate

Harlow

Essex CM20 2JE

England

and Associated Companies throughout the world.

[www.pearsonelt.com](http://www.pearsonelt.com)

© Pearson Education Limited 2015

The right of Frances Eales, Steve Oakes and Louis Harrison to be identified as authors of this Work has been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

First published 2015

ISBN: 978-1-4479-7718-6

Set in Aptifer sans 10/12 pt

Printed in Slovakia by Neografia

**Illustration acknowledgements**

Illustrated by Eric@kja-artists

**Photo acknowledgements**

The publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce their photographs:

(Key: b-bottom; c-centre; l-left; r-right; t-top)

**123RF.com:** 9bl, 9br, 35, 5 l (tea), 5 ltl, 5 ltr; Natalia Lisovskaya 30b, Raman Maisel 8b, Maridav 8c, Wavebreak Media Ltd 48, Nils Weymann 68t, 68b; **Alamy Images:** Ashley Cooper 28, Cultura Creative 8t, Natural Visions 50, PhotoAlto 23; **Fotolia.com:** MasterLu 69; **Getty Images:** Elie Bernager 47, Michael Blann 15, Domen Colja 29, John Lund / Sam Diephuis 6 l, Trevor Williams 25; **Press Association Images:** Tsvangirai Mukwazhi 2 l; **Shutterstock.com:** Diego Cervo 62, d l 3 44b, Jack.Q 24, Kavram 30t, Kurhan 44t, Neiron Photo's 4 l, Nikkos 38, PhotoBarmaley 5 l (coffee); **The Kobal Collection:** Paramount 65

All other images © Pearson Education

Every effort has been made to trace the copyright holders and we apologise in advance for any unintentional omissions. We would be pleased to insert the appropriate acknowledgement in any subsequent edition of this publication.

# speakout **2ND** EDITION

## Upper Intermediate Workbook

with key

Frances Eales • Steve Oakes  
Louis Harrison





1	NEW THINGS	Page 4
1.1	<b>READING</b>   Speed shrinking <b>VOCABULARY</b>   personality <b>GRAMMAR</b>   direct and indirect questions <b>WRITING</b>   an advice forum message; learn to edit for accuracy	
1.2	<b>VOCABULARY</b>   feelings <b>LISTENING</b>   Dreams Come True <b>GRAMMAR</b>   present perfect <b>VOCABULARY PLUS</b>   word building: nouns	
1.3	<b>VOCABULARY</b>   adverts <b>FUNCTION</b>   polite enquiries <b>LEARN TO</b>   manage enquiries	

2	ISSUES	Page 9
2.1	<b>VOCABULARY</b>   issues <b>GRAMMAR</b>   present perfect simple and continuous <b>LISTENING</b>   We are what we do <b>VOCABULARY PLUS</b>   verbs/nouns with the same form	
2.2	<b>READING</b>   So you want to be a spy? <b>VOCABULARY</b>   surveillance <b>GRAMMAR</b>   the passive <b>WRITING</b>   a letter of complaint; learn to use formal written language	
2.3	<b>FUNCTION</b>   opinions <b>LEARN TO</b>   support your viewpoint <b>VOCABULARY</b>   opinion adjectives	

## Review 1

Page 14

3	STORIES	Page 18
3.1	<b>GRAMMAR</b>   narrative tenses <b>LISTENING</b>   The seven types of stories <b>VOCABULARY</b>   sayings <b>WRITING</b>   a story	
3.2	<b>VOCABULARY</b>   adjectives for stories <b>GRAMMAR</b>   <i>I wish, if only</i> <b>READING</b>   Outstanding <b>VOCABULARY PLUS</b>   multi-word verbs	
3.3	<b>VOCABULARY</b>   reading genres <b>FUNCTION</b>   expressing likes and dislikes <b>LEARN TO</b>   summarise a plot	

4	DOWNTIME	Page 23
4.1	<b>LISTENING</b>   Are you addicted to social networking? <b>VOCABULARY</b>   free time <b>GRAMMAR</b>   present and past habits <b>WRITING</b>   an opinion essay; learn to use linkers	
4.2	<b>READING</b>   Space tourism is here! <b>VOCABULARY</b>   positive adjectives <b>GRAMMAR</b>   future forms <b>VOCABULARY PLUS</b>   uncountable and plural nouns	
4.3	<b>FUNCTION</b>   describing procedures <b>VOCABULARY</b>   abilities <b>LEARN TO</b>   use mirror questions	

## Review 2

Page 28

5	IDEAS	Page 32
5.1	<b>LISTENING</b>   The Ig Nobel Prize <b>VOCABULARY</b>   change <b>GRAMMAR</b>   articles <b>VOCABULARY PLUS</b>   compound nouns	
5.2	<b>READING</b>   The ten best and worst words in advertising <b>VOCABULARY</b>   advertising collocations <b>GRAMMAR</b>   real and hypothetical conditionals <b>WRITING</b>   a report; learn to make written comparisons	
5.3	<b>FUNCTION</b>   suggesting ideas <b>VOCABULARY</b>   collocations with <i>idea</i> <b>LEARN TO</b>   show reservations	

6	AGE	Page 37
6.1	<b>VOCABULARY</b>   age <b>GRAMMAR</b>   modal verbs and related phrases <b>LISTENING</b>   What's the best age ... ? <b>VOCABULARY PLUS</b>   word-building: prefixes	
6.2	<b>READING</b>   2030 vision <b>GRAMMAR</b>   future perfect and continuous <b>VOCABULARY</b>   optimism/pessimism <b>WRITING</b>   an informal email; learn to focus on informal style	
6.3	<b>VOCABULARY</b>   collocations <b>FUNCTION</b>   persuading <b>LEARN TO</b>   clarify ideas	

## Review 3

Page 42



7	MEDIA	Page 46
7.1	<b>VOCABULARY</b>   television <b>GRAMMAR</b>   quantifiers <b>LISTENING</b>   favourite childhood TV programme <b>VOCABULARY PLUS</b>   multi-word verbs	
7.2	<b>READING</b>   Say 'cheese' now ... sue later <b>GRAMMAR</b>   reported speech <b>VOCABULARY</b>   reporting verbs <b>WRITING</b>   a discursive essay; learn to use linkers of contrast	
7.3	<b>VOCABULARY</b>   the press <b>FUNCTION</b>   adding emphasis <b>LEARN TO</b>   make guesses	

8	BEHAVIOUR	Page 51
8.1	<b>VOCABULARY</b>   collocations: decisions <b>VOCABULARY PLUS</b>   compound adjectives <b>LISTENING</b>   behaviour experiment <b>GRAMMAR</b>   past and mixed conditionals	
8.2	<b>READING</b>   Sleep positions give clue to the nation's personality <b>VOCABULARY</b>   values <b>GRAMMAR</b>   -ing form and infinitive <b>WRITING</b>   an informal article; learn how to use linkers of purpose	
8.3	<b>VOCABULARY</b>   behaviour <b>FUNCTION</b>   handling an awkward situation <b>LEARN TO</b>   soften a message	

## Review 4

Page 56

9	TROUBLE	Page 60
9.1	<b>LISTENING</b>   inattentional blindness <b>GRAMMAR</b>   -ing form and infinitive <b>VOCABULARY</b>   crime <b>VOCABULARY PLUS</b>   dependent prepositions	
9.2	<b>READING</b>   Five reasons you'll fall for an internet scam <b>VOCABULARY</b>   synonyms <b>GRAMMAR</b>   past modals of deduction <b>WRITING</b>   a 'how to' leaflet; learn to avoid repetition	
9.3	<b>FUNCTION</b>   reporting an incident <b>VOCABULARY</b>   incidents <b>LEARN TO</b>   rephrase	

10	CULTURE	Page 65
10.1	<b>READING</b>   Film fan forum <b>VOCABULARY</b>   adjectives to describe films <b>GRAMMAR</b>   relative clauses <b>WRITING</b>   a review; learn to use adverb + past participle combinations	
10.2	<b>GRAMMAR</b>   participle clauses <b>VOCABULARY</b>   the arts <b>LISTENING</b>   how to take a good photo <b>VOCABULARY PLUS</b>   two-part phrases	
10.3	<b>FUNCTION</b>   giving a tour <b>VOCABULARY</b>   dimensions <b>LEARN TO</b>   express estimates	

## Review 5

Page 70

## AUDIO SCRIPTS

Page 74

## ANSWER KEY

Page 82

## READING

FIRST THERE WAS **SPEED DATING**THEN **SPEED FLATMATING** ... AND NOW ...**SPEED SHRINKING:****A THREE-MINUTE CURE?**

- 1 New Yorkers are famous for spending more time with their therapists, or 'shrinks', than with their friends. Whether that's true is open to debate, but with the arrival of speed shrinking, they'll find they have more time left for their personal life and more cash left in their pockets as well.
- 2 'You only have three minutes to say your problem and get advice,' said Andu Novac, the first person I spoke to when I arrived at my first speed-shrinking event. 'That's so you don't waste time going into detail.'
- 3 In the newest variant of a format that seems to be inspired by speed dating, participants have the opportunity to seek the advice of eight different therapists, each providing a three-minute session. Speed shrinking is the brainchild of Susan Shapiro, a professor of journalism who has also written a book on the subject. Shapiro stumbled across the idea a few years ago when she herself was looking for a new therapist and found a way to try out several of them at minimal cost.
- 4 This evening's event, held in a university lecture hall, is free and has attracted a long queue of people hoping to find a quick cure for their emotional quandaries. Many of those attending are unwilling to talk about their worries to anyone but the therapists, but problems seem to run the gamut from broken relationships, to anxiety about work and money, to general depression, as well as a variety of phobias. Advice tends to be succinct and practical, as suits the format.
- 5 'I'm really unhappy in my job,' Novac tells therapist Adrian Jones. 'I wish I'd become a painter, but now I feel stuck in this position I have at a bank.' 'Follow your dreams,' Jones tells him. 'You may end up poorer, but you won't have the regret of not doing what you really want to do.' Jones's advice hardly seems original, but Novac says he is satisfied. 'I liked his style – he seemed to understand and care,' explains Novac. 'I'm actually looking for a new therapist and this is a great way to try out eight of them in a short time.'
- 6 That's actually why many therapists take part in the event, Jones tells us. 'This is a great source of new clients. And it's a good way for me to advertise my new book – I just have it on the table in front of me and refer to it during my sessions.'
- 7 Some of those seeking advice aren't entirely happy with the format. 'People near me can hear what I'm telling the therapist,' remarks Donna Bersch. 'I feel self-conscious.' But with the loud buzz in the room that sometimes reaches the level of shouting, it's hard to imagine that anyone could actually eavesdrop on another session. Sometimes, they're lucky to be able to hear the person sitting opposite them!

**B** Match the people 1–4 with the roles a)–c).

- |           |   |              |
|-----------|---|--------------|
| 1 Novac   | b | a) therapist |
| 2 Shapiro |   | b) client    |
| 3 Jones   |   | c) founder   |
| 4 Bersch  |   |              |

**C** Are the statements true (T) or false (F)? Underline the words/phrases in the article that helped you.

- 1 New Yorkers prefer to spend more time with their therapists than with their friends. F
- 2 Shapiro works at a university.
- 3 In speed shrinking, the therapist gets paid cash.
- 4 A lot of people don't want to tell the reporter what their problems are.
- 5 Novac thinks that Jones's advice is disappointingly unoriginal.
- 6 Many of the therapists participate in order to get more business.
- 7 Bersch doesn't like how noisy it gets sometimes.
- 8 People sometimes can't hear each other because they talk too softly.

**D** Find words in the article to match definitions 1–8.

- 1 the way that something is organised or designed (paragraph 3)  
format
- 2 idea or plan that one person has thought of (paragraph 3)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 found by chance (paragraph 3)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 difficult situations where you cannot decide what to do (paragraph 4)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 strong unreasonable fears of particular things (paragraph 4)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 clearly expressed in a few words (paragraph 4)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 a job in a particular organisation (paragraph 5)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 secretly listen to another person's conversation (paragraph 7)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**1 A** Read the heading and tick the best summary, a), b) or c). Then read the article and check.

- a) It's about a service where overweight people can lose weight quickly.
- b) It's about a service where people can get advice from a therapist in a short time.
- c) It's about a service where people get help making their lives simpler.



## VOCABULARY

### PERSONALITY

#### 2 A Correct the mistake in each phrase.

- 1 I don't know why you say he's down-on-<sup>to</sup>earth, c
- 2 I never plan what I say, I'm very spontaneously
- 3 Fabio tends to keep himself in himself. I don't see much of him because
- 4 My colleague Bill is a real person person,
- a) and other people seem to think I'm quick and wit because of that.
- b) you can tell he enjoys company because he's such a good laughter.
- c) I think he's a real computer gawk and he's not very practical.
- d) he arrives at work early and leaves early – he's a morn person and I'm not.

#### B Match the sentence halves.

## GRAMMAR

### DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUESTIONS

#### 3 Make the therapist's questions with the prompts.

- 1 Why / you / come / see / me / today?  
A: Why have you come to see me today?  
B: I keep getting headaches.
- 2 What / these headaches / like?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Absolutely terrible.
- 3 What / cause / the headaches, / think?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Mainly thinking about money.
- 4 What / think / about / moment?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: That clock.
- 5 that clock / remind / you / anything?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Yes, money.
- 6 Why / that?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Because I'm paying by the minute! Let's stop now.
- 7 OK. / How / like / pay – / cash / credit card?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_

#### 4 A Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use between two and five words, including the word given.

- 1 Could you introduce us to the director? WONDER  
I wonder if you could introduce us to the director.
- 2 How much did your camera cost? CAMERA  
Do you mind me \_\_\_\_\_ cost?
- 3 What do you do exactly? TELLING  
Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ do exactly?
- 4 Is it really worth upgrading to the new smartphone? WHETHER  
I'd like to know \_\_\_\_\_ worth upgrading to the new smartphone.
- 5 Which platform does the Eurostar train leave from? TRAIN  
Can you tell me which platform \_\_\_\_\_ from?
- 6 What will he do when he discovers the mistake? DO  
What do you \_\_\_\_\_ when he discovers the mistake?

#### B 1.1 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat, paying attention to the polite intonation.

## WRITING

### AN ADVICE FORUM MESSAGE; LEARN TO EDIT FOR ACCURACY

#### 5 A Read the forum question and reply below. Use the correction code to mark the mistakes and then correct them.

Correction code:	sp = spelling
v = verb form	p = punctuation
gr = grammar	wo = word order
ww = wrong word	st = style



JUSTINE

Can anyone helping <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_? I've just got my essay to write about personality but the articles I've found are too difficult for me to read. Then I realised the real problem is my poor vocabulary. When I reed <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ quickly I can't understand the real meaning of the article and the only way I can understand it is by using my dictionary all the time. I'm reading so slowly it's going to take me about three weeks to finish the writing <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.  
What can I do about my English vocabulary? I'm worried so <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.



MARTA

Justine, keep calm? <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ I know what you mean. The first time I wrote an essay in a foreign language, reading was the most difficult thing and the most difficult part of reading was vocabulary. The first thing to do is discuss the problem with your tutor. The next thing is to obtain <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ a good English-English dictionary. I joined a language-learning community. I joined the group <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ with a similar problem and we all helped each other with our vocabulary. Try it!

#### B Write a reply from Justine to Marta (120–150 words). Thank her for her suggestions, say which you think are most useful, which you will try and what other ways of learning vocabulary you are going to try.



## VOCABULARY

### FEELINGS

**1 A** Put the letters in the correct order to make words and phrases. The first letter of each word is underlined.


- 1 (made my) amcuthsnotr \_\_\_\_\_ *stomach turn*
- 2 orevthoonme \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 nigaskh (like a leaf) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 (wish the earth would) allswemouwp \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 darkaww \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 livedeer \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 safotedorc (my wits) \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 gnicafsatin \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 radtsfruet \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 seedprism \_\_\_\_\_

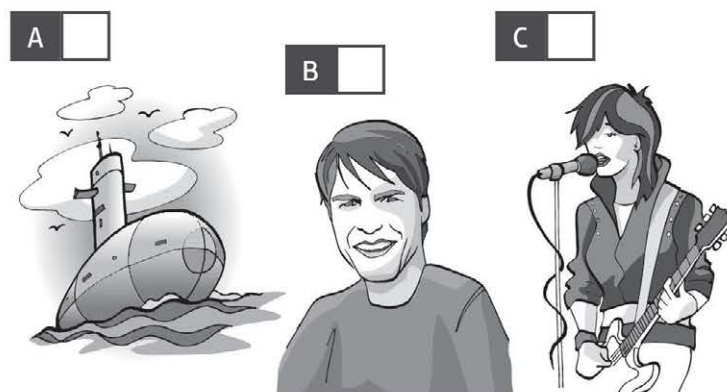
**B** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words and phrases from Exercise 1A.

- 1 My audition was terrible, I was so anxious I was \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 You look totally disgusted. You look like your \_\_\_\_\_. They're only oysters!
- 3 I find volcanoes really \_\_\_\_\_. I've read lots of books on the topic.
- 4 I lost my place in the middle of giving the presentation. It was really embarrassing – I just wished the \_\_\_\_\_ me up.
- 5 We went to Cairo to see the exhibition, but it was closed. I was really \_\_\_\_\_!
- 6 My wife came into the shop when I was buying her some perfume. It was quite \_\_\_\_\_ and I had to hide what I was doing.
- 7 Seiji had been missing for hours, so his parents were enormously \_\_\_\_\_ when they found him safe and sound.
- 8 When the plane started bumping up and down I was \_\_\_\_\_. I was really frightened. I thought we were going to die.
- 9 You have a great singing voice. I'm really \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 I was quite worried about the test yesterday. I thought I'd failed it, so I was \_\_\_\_\_ to find out that I'd got top marks.

**C** Which of the sentences in Exercise 1B contain modifiers (*quite, totally, etc.*) that can be replaced by *very*?

## LISTENING

**2 A**  1.2 Read the advert and listen to the interview. Number the pictures A–C in the order the dreams are mentioned.



## DREAMS COME TRUE

Do you have experiences you've always wanted to try but never thought were possible? Whether your dream is ordinary or extraordinary, it's special to us! With Dreams Come True, there's always a first time – we guarantee it!

**B** Listen again and circle the correct answer.

- 1 What did the first client want?
  - a) to appear with a rock star in a live concert
  - b) people to recognise her talent
  - c) to play in front of a large number of people
- 2 Why does Owen Winters find his job at Dreams Come True easy?
  - a) It's similar to his previous job.
  - b) He has worked in business for many years.
  - c) He knows a lot of people in the music business.
- 3 What is the secret about the supersonic flight?
  - a) the name of the client who wants to fly
  - b) the financial details of the flight
  - c) where the plane comes from
- 4 How did the person with Tom Cruise make-up feel about the experience?
  - a) He loved all the attention.
  - b) He didn't enjoy it.
  - c) He didn't like the bodyguards.
- 5 What happened to the woman who wanted to go into space?
  - a) She couldn't afford it at first but now she can.
  - b) She was originally disappointed but now she's going to achieve her dream.
  - c) It has taken Dreams Come True a long time to plan and organise the trip.

**C** Listen again. How many of the dreams mentioned are connected with pop culture (P), transport (T) or history (H)?

## GRAMMAR

### PRESENT PERFECT

**3** Complete the sentences with the present perfect or past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Is there something you *have always wanted* (always want) to do but somehow \_\_\_\_\_ (never manage) to?
- 2 Not long ago our company \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a client who \_\_\_\_\_ (want) to be a rock star.
- 3 I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) as a production manager in the film business for many years, till just a few years ago.
- 4 How much \_\_\_\_\_ (the concert / cost) last year? \_\_\_\_\_ (the cost / go) up since then?
- 5 What other dreams \_\_\_\_\_ (you / make) come true recently?
- 6 We \_\_\_\_\_ (just finish) working with a client who wants to fly across the Atlantic Ocean on a supersonic aeroplane.
- 7 One client wanted to fly in space but that wasn't possible back when she first \_\_\_\_\_ (request) it.
- 8 Since then it \_\_\_\_\_ (become) possible for ordinary people to go into space.

**4** Complete the conversations with the present perfect or past simple form of the verbs in the box.

speak forget leave happen not ask be (x2)  
get back see have (x2) stay go

- 1 **A:** \_\_\_\_\_ anyone  
\_\_\_\_\_ my pen?  
**B:** What does it look like?  
**A:** It's silver. I'm sure I \_\_\_\_\_ it on the table before we \_\_\_\_\_ to lunch.
- 2 **A:** \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ to Kiera today?  
**B:** No, and I \_\_\_\_\_ her yet if she wants to come out with us tomorrow.
- 3 **A:** Hi, Suzie. When \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ from holiday?  
**B:** A few days ago but I \_\_\_\_\_ already \_\_\_\_\_ it. There \_\_\_\_\_ over 300 emails in my inbox!  
**A:** I sympathise! The same thing \_\_\_\_\_ after my break.
- 4 **A:** Do you know anyone who \_\_\_\_\_ flu?  
**B:** No, thankfully. What about you?  
**A:** Frank \_\_\_\_\_ away from school last week as one of the other kids \_\_\_\_\_ a fever, but it was a false alarm.  
**B:** Yes, so far everyone in my family \_\_\_\_\_ OK.

## VOCABULARY PLUS

### WORD BUILDING: NOUNS

**5 A** Complete the quotes with the noun form of the words in capitals.

- 1 '\_\_\_\_\_ is never without a reason, but seldom with a good one.'  
*Benjamin Franklin, US President*  
ANGRY
- 2 'The chief enemy of \_\_\_\_\_ is "good" sense.'  
*Pablo Picasso, Artist*  
CREATIVE
- 3 'There is no such thing as pure pleasure; some \_\_\_\_\_ always goes with it.'  
*Ovid, poet*  
ANXIOUS
- 4 'Most things in life are moments of pleasure and a lifetime of \_\_\_\_\_; photography is a moment of \_\_\_\_\_ and a lifetime of pleasure.'  
*Tony Benn, politician*  
EMBARRASSED
- 5 'There can be no deep \_\_\_\_\_ where there is not deep love.'  
*Martin Luther King Jr, civil rights activist*  
DISAPPOINTED
- 6 'If I ever completely lost my \_\_\_\_\_ I would be frightened half to death.'  
*Paul Lynde, actor*  
NERVOUS
- 7 'Prayer is not an old woman's idle \_\_\_\_\_. Properly understood and applied, it is the most potent instrument of action.'  
*Mahatma Gandhi, leader and activist*  
AMUSED
- 8 'Men lose more conquests by their own \_\_\_\_\_ than by any virtue in the woman.'  
*Ninon de L'Enclos, writer*  
AWKWARD
- 9 'A life of \_\_\_\_\_ is inevitable for any coach whose main enjoyment is winning.'  
*Chuck Noll, American football coach*  
FRUSTRATED

**B** Tick the quotations you agree with and put a cross next to those you don't agree with.



## VOCABULARY

### ADVERTS

1 Complete the adverts with the words in the box.

refundable negotiable for in  
sign enrolment trial

### CIRCUIT TRAINING

LIMITED <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
– ONLY TWO PLACES LEFT!

<sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ up now.

Fill <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ your  
personal  
details on  
this form and  
pay the deposit  
today!

(Deposit is non-  
<sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_)



### TRY THIS AMAZING APP

New Life-organiser app is now  
available for Android users.

There is a free <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
for the first month.



### GUYS & GALS

Tickets available for matinée  
performance – due to limited  
availability of seats, seating  
is not <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and  
two-<sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_-one deal  
does not apply to this show.

## FUNCTION

### POLITE ENQUIRIES

2 Correct two mistakes in each sentence.

- 1 I'm like to enquire for a reservation I made.
- 2 I was wandering is that would be possible.
- 3 Would there be any chances of get the same price for the following weekend?
- 4 I am really grateful you could make an exception.
- 5 Would your mind saying me why it's so complicated to change?
- 6 Do you me mind asking what is your name?
- 7 Will you mind transfer me to your supervisor.

3 1.3 Listen to the intonation of the enquiries.  
Write polite (P) or impolite (I).

- |                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 a) <u>P</u> b) _____ | 5 a) _____ b) _____ |
| 2 a) _____ b) _____    | 6 a) _____ b) _____ |
| 3 a) _____ b) _____    | 7 a) _____ b) _____ |
| 4 a) _____ b) _____    |                     |

## LEARN TO

### MANAGE ENQUIRIES

4 A Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- a) transferring / you / mind / would / me / .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- b) that / just / difficult, / it's / be / sorry / to / ...  
\_\_\_\_\_
- c) a / me / with / minute / bear / .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- d) question, / keeping / got / you / I've / one / if / I'm / more / not / .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- e) you / keep / to / sorry / .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- f) hold / minute? / just / you / a / I'll / can / on / see / .  
\_\_\_\_\_

B 1.4 Listen to the conversation and read the audio script on page 74. Tick the sentences above which are used. Which sentence is not used?



## VOCABULARY

### ISSUES

- 1 A Write the problem for each headline. The first letters are given.

**LOCAL PEOPLE REJECT  
PLANNED POWER STATION**

1 do \_\_\_\_\_

**Electricity and gas  
prices rise by 23%**

2 ec \_\_\_\_\_

**NUMBER OF PEOPLE SLEEPING  
ON CITY STREETS RISING**

3 ur \_\_\_\_\_

**PRESIDENT ASKS FOR  
CHANGES IN GOVERNMENT**

4 po \_\_\_\_\_

**OCEAN TEMPERATURES  
RISE BY 0.5°C**

5 gl \_\_\_\_\_

**RAILWAY WORKERS GO ON STRIKE**

6 in \_\_\_\_\_

**PRIVACY AT RISK FROM  
INTERNET COMPANIES**

7 et \_\_\_\_\_

**NO RAIN FOR FOURTH MONTHS –  
FARMERS WORRIED**

8 ru \_\_\_\_\_

- B 2.1 Listen and check.

C Listen again and write the words next to the correct stress pattern.

Oo \_\_\_\_\_  
Ooo \_\_\_\_\_  
oOo \_\_\_\_\_  
oOoo \_\_\_\_\_  
ooOo \_\_\_\_\_

## GRAMMAR

### PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE AND CONTINUOUS

- 2 A Match the beginnings a) and b) with the endings i) and ii).

- 1 a) She's done  
b) She's been doing  
i) her homework since she got home from school.  
ii) all her homework.
- 2 a) I've sent  
b) I've been sending  
i) twenty-five application letters this morning.  
ii) application letters all morning. I need a break!
- 3 a) Pete's called  
b) Pete's been calling  
i) you all evening. Is your mobile on?  
ii) and left you a message.
- 4 a) I've read this magazine.  
b) I've been reading this magazine.  
i) Do you want to borrow it when I've finished?  
ii) Do you want to borrow it?
- 5 a) Julia's gone to the gym –  
b) Julia's been going to the gym  
i) and she's ten kilos lighter now.  
ii) shall I ask her to call you back?
- 6 a) The temperature has dropped  
b) The temperature has been dropping  
i) all day.  
ii) to minus thirty.

- B 2.2 Listen to the sentences and repeat what you hear. Pay attention to the stress and rhythm.

- 3 Complete the blog post with the present perfect simple or continuous form of the verbs in brackets. If both are possible, use the continuous form.



I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) all my life and I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) more than twenty-five countries, many of them less rich than my own. I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (often / want) to take something to repay people for their hospitality but I <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (never / know) what to choose. Anyway, recently I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (explore) a number of websites that give advice and I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (find) a great one called stuffyourruck-sack.com. It was created by Kate Humble, who <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (present) wildlife programmes on television for many years. It's a beautifully simple idea: the website matches up charities that need stuff with people who are willing to provide and deliver it. Travellers <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) the website about 187 organisations in eighty-one countries, and these include schools needing books or footballs, orphanages needing clothes and toys and trade organisations needing mobiles. So far it looks as if the response <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) good and the website <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (recently / appear) in a 'Find of the Year' survey of new sites.

## LISTENING

### 4 A Read the text and answer the questions.

- What is the aim of the organisation? How does it want to achieve it?
- Which of the ideas 1–8 are connected to the environment (E) and which are connected to personal and social development (PS)?

In 2004, a small London-based community organisation called *We Are What We Do* published a book, *Change the world for a fiver\**. It contained fifty simple actions which ordinary people could do to make the world a better place. Now it is a global movement with a lively website, millions of active participants and more than 130 ideas for actions.

Its motto is:

**SMALL ACTIONS × LOTS OF PEOPLE = BIG CHANGE.**



- Use a biro from start to finish E
- Smile and smile back \_\_\_\_\_
- Do something you think you are unable to do \_\_\_\_\_
- Buy fairly traded products \_\_\_\_\_
- Remember people's names \_\_\_\_\_
- Turn off the tap when you brush your teeth \_\_\_\_\_
- Say 'no' to plastic bags whenever possible \_\_\_\_\_
- Learn one good joke \_\_\_\_\_

\*£5

**B** ▶ 2.3 Listen to four people speaking about their experiences. Which ideas 1–8 in the text in Exercise 4A did each one try?

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_

**C** Listen again and make notes about:

- why the speaker chose that particular action
- what problems each speaker experienced.

Speaker 1 a) \_\_\_\_\_  
b) \_\_\_\_\_

Speaker 2 a) \_\_\_\_\_  
b) \_\_\_\_\_

Speaker 3 a) \_\_\_\_\_  
b) \_\_\_\_\_

Speaker 4 a) \_\_\_\_\_  
b) \_\_\_\_\_

## VOCABULARY PLUS

### VERBS/NOUNS WITH THE SAME FORM

### 5 A Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.

decrease project record permit appeal

- In the 2008 Olympics, Usain Bolt set three world \_\_\_\_\_ including the 100 metres.
- If you stay in Spain for more than ninety days you need to apply for a resident's \_\_\_\_\_.
- CCTV cameras have been successful, with a huge \_\_\_\_\_ in incidents of violence.
- Police have launched a nationwide \_\_\_\_\_ for help to find a missing sixteen-year-old.
- The National Gallery is planning to \_\_\_\_\_ gigantic images of Picasso paintings onto the outside of the building.
- The Water for You scheme is a \_\_\_\_\_ to give hundreds of people access to clean water.
- Researchers \_\_\_\_\_ South American river turtles talking to each other underwater.
- The amount of ice at the South Pole \_\_\_\_\_ significantly over the last ten years.
- Students \_\_\_\_\_ to work and study in this country.
- Environmentalists \_\_\_\_\_ to supermarkets to reduce the amount of food waste.

**B** ▶ 2.4 Listen and check your answers.

**C** Listen again and underline the stress in the words you wrote in Exercise 5A.

records



## READING

**1 A** You are going to read about a course that trains people to be spies. Read the list and tick the three things that you think are most important for a spy to be able to do.

- a) break into a property
- b) drive fast without getting into an accident
- c) follow someone without getting caught
- d) pretend they are someone else
- e) use karate or other martial arts
- f) win the trust of a stranger

**B** Read the article. Which three things from the list above are mentioned?

1 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_

## SO YOU WANT TO BE A SPY?

- 1 Despite recent developments in surveillance technology, a camera is no substitute for the human eye and there will always be a need for that most secretive of professions, the spy. In the BBC3 series, *Spy*, a group of eight volunteers took a two-month crash course in spying. Their trainers were former spies and experts in fields such as psychology and body language.
- 2 Before they joined the course, the would-be spies were allowed to tell only one person what they were really doing; for everyone else, they had to invent a believable cover story to explain their two-month absence. A couple of them immediately got into trouble when their story of a two-month job in New York resulted in friends promising to visit them.
- 3 As soon as they arrived at headquarters and before they had time to unpack, the eight 'spies' faced their first challenge: they had just ten minutes to talk their way into the flat of a complete stranger and be seen by their trainers drinking a glass of water on the balcony. It's a great task and one often used by real spy agencies to test their spies' abilities to act under pressure and think up plausible reasons to gain access to places.
- 4 The recruits learnt about surveillance techniques including how to 'go grey' and disappear into a crowd and also how to organise a surveillance operation on a house. This meant breaking into the property, planting secret cameras and bugs and fixing tracking devices to cars.
- 5 Another week, the recruits had to go undercover, adopt new identities and take temporary jobs in a gym, a clothes shop and a barber's. They had to convince their co-workers that they were genuine, gain their trust and finally persuade one of them to do something wrong, for example to lie or to sign a false document.
- 6 At the end of the experience, what qualities did they think were important for being a spy? 'A spy needs to be a quick thinker, work well under pressure and be able to blend in.' It helps to be a woman: 'Sandy, our female trainer, loved to remind us how women made better spies.' So if you are a tall male it's probably not worth applying. And were any of the participants keen to become a spy? Certainly not one married candidate: 'A Service insider told me that there is an exceptionally high divorce rate in the spy business with a lot of agents marrying their secretaries – the only person they can confide in and trust.'

**C** Match the quotes a)–e) with one of the paragraphs in the article.

- a) I had to get right underneath and it was difficult to fix it on securely.
- b) I'm a location manager for a TV company and we need a place to film.
- c) I'm going on safari and I'll be back in two months.
- d) It's just another thing that girls do better than boys!
- e) I used to work at a men's clothing store in Soho – that's how I got this job.

**D** Find words and phrases in the article that match definitions 1–8.

- 1 can't replace (paragraph 1) *is no substitute for*
- 2 fast and intensive period of training (paragraph 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 someone who wants to be something; potential (paragraph 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 believable (paragraph 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 become unnoticeable (paragraph 4) \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 work secretly with a different identity (paragraph 5) \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 look similar to everything around you (paragraph 6) \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 tell secrets to (paragraph 6) \_\_\_\_\_

## VOCABULARY

### SURVEILLANCE

**2** Complete the sentences. The first letters are given.

- 1 When you *id* \_\_\_\_\_ someone or something you recognise and correctly name someone or something.
- 2 People or organisations that are in charge of a particular country or area are called the *au* \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 If something is a *de* \_\_\_\_\_ to crime, it acts to reduce the chance of it happening.
- 4 To *st* \_\_\_\_\_ information is to keep facts in a computer or in a file.
- 5 To find information on a computer is to *ac* \_\_\_\_\_ data.
- 6 Carefully watch something over a period of time, for example a nurse *mo* \_\_\_\_\_ a patient's condition.
- 7 Crime *pr* \_\_\_\_\_ is all about stopping something bad from happening before it occurs.
- 8 If you *ke* \_\_\_\_\_ *tr* \_\_\_\_\_ of someone who is moving, you always know their position.

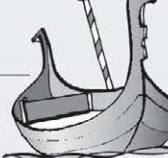
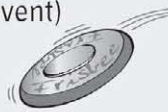
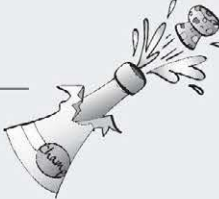
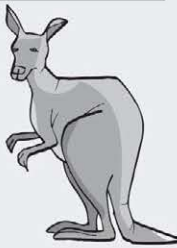


## GRAMMAR

## THE PASSIVE

- 3 A** Complete the sentences with the passive form of the verbs in brackets.

# STRANGE BUT TRUE!

- All gondolas in Venice, Italy must \_\_\_\_\_ (paint) black unless they belong to a high official. 
- The modern Frisbee \_\_\_\_\_ (invent) by the Frisbie Pie Company in 1946 when their pie tins \_\_\_\_\_ (throw) around by employees during breaks. 
- Over the centuries, Korea \_\_\_\_\_ (invade) more times than any other country in the world.
- The white surface of the Taj Mahal \_\_\_\_\_ (gradually / damage) by pollution and is turning yellow.
- British guidebooks in the nineteenth century advised women to put pins in their mouths to avoid \_\_\_\_\_ (kiss) in the dark when trains went through tunnels.
- You are more likely \_\_\_\_\_ (kill) by a champagne cork than a poisonous spider, but most people are more afraid of spiders. 
- Kangaroos can \_\_\_\_\_ (find) in the wild in only two countries: Australia and New Zealand. 
- When Christopher Columbus 'discovered' America in 1492, the continent \_\_\_\_\_ (already / explore) by the Vikings from Norway over three centuries earlier.

**B** Two of the facts above are false. Which are they?

- 4** Complete the sentences with the correct active or passive form of the verbs in brackets.

## TECHNOLOGY UPDATE

Currently hundreds of trainee medical students

<sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (teach) through the online virtual world *Second Life*. Once a day students <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (send) to locations in the online world to treat computer-generated patients. When they are there, virtual equipment can <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (use) to check the patients at the scene and then the trainees can <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (decide) on the best course of action. The training tool has been a great success so far and from next year it <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (use) at a number of medical schools around the world.

Pollution is an ever-growing problem in our cities, but in the near future a new system <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (allow) traffic managers to identify pollution hotspots. It <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) possible to alter the movement of cars through the city by changing the traffic light sequencing to direct cars away from problem areas. A computer <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (also / send) commuters warning text alerts on their mobile phones so they can decide how to avoid the hotspot. The new pollution monitoring system <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (test) successfully for the first time at a trial last month and could <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (introduce) as soon as next year.

## WRITING

### A LETTER OF COMPLAINT; LEARN TO USE FORMAL WRITTEN LANGUAGE

- 5 A** Correct the mistakes in the underlined phrases.

Dear Sir or Madam,

<sup>1</sup>I am writing with regard for my stay in one of your hotels.

I stayed at the Riley Hotel in Belfast from 14 to 16 June and experienced a number of problems. Firstly, the room had not been properly cleaned. Secondly, there were no tea- or coffee-making facilities in the room. Finally, there was a party in the room under mine and it kept me awake until early morning.

I have already spoken to the hotel manager about this but she was quite rude and suggested that I write to you.

In order <sup>2</sup>to dissolve this matter, I am requesting that you refund the money for my stay at the hotel. <sup>3</sup>Please contract me within ten days of the date of this letter <sup>4</sup>to convince that this step has been taken.

<sup>5</sup>Thank you for your promptly attention to this matter.

<sup>6</sup>Yours faithlessly,

Viola Gresham

**B** Write a letter of complaint (120–150 words) to a restaurant where you recently had an important lunch, e.g. a meeting or a first date. Include three things that went wrong.

## FUNCTION

### OPINIONS

**1 A** Cross out the unnecessary words in the underlined phrases.

**A:** Do you think students should be allowed to use their phones in class?

**B:** Yeah, <sup>1</sup>I'm not in favour of that. The way I see it is that students would be more motivated if they could use phones, maybe to make short movies or things like that.

**A:** Mm, <sup>2</sup>I'm not being so sure, you know how kids are. <sup>3</sup>It seems that to me that they'd just start texting each other whenever they were bored.

**B:** Mm, well, <sup>4</sup>I'm agree to a certain extent. They would certainly need very strict rules, you know, about turning them on and off. But phones could be useful for things like practising languages or setting homework reminders.

**A:** Yes, <sup>5</sup>I can suppose so, but what about bullying, you know, kids sending each other nasty messages? Or phones could be a target for thieves.

**B:** <sup>6</sup>Is fair enough, but either of those things could happen after school.

**A:** Hmm, <sup>7</sup>I see your point is, but <sup>8</sup>I'm still not so convinced. I think on balance it's better to keep them out of classes.

**B:** <sup>9</sup>I don't disagree. I think we should encourage them.

**B** ▶ 2.5 Listen or read the audio script on page 75 to check.

**C** ▶ 2.6 Listen to the opinion phrases and repeat what you hear.



## VOCABULARY

### OPINION ADJECTIVES

**3 A** Put the letters in bold in the correct order to make adjectives. The first letter is underlined.

**A:** What are the drink drive laws in your country?

**B:** Zero tolerance. It's <sup>1</sup>g**lelial** to drive if you've drunk any alcohol at all.

**A:** That seems like a <sup>2</sup>r**asnoaeble** law to me.

**A:** Models shouldn't wear fur. It's <sup>3</sup>c**hutainel** to kill animals just for fashion.

**B:** I'd go along with you there, but what about in really cold places?

**A:** I think it's possible that one day everyone will have a microchip under their skin from birth.

**B:** Really? I find the whole idea deeply <sup>4</sup>b**irdugsint**.

**A:** Jan's gone too far this time! His idea at the meeting was <sup>5</sup>u**regasouto**!

**B:** I agree. I thought it was silly and <sup>6</sup>i**repsrbenilo**.

**A:** I entirely agree.

**B** ▶ 2.7 Listen and write the adjectives next to the correct stress patterns.

Ooo \_\_\_\_\_  
oOo \_\_\_\_\_  
oOoo \_\_\_\_\_  
ooOoo \_\_\_\_\_

**C** Listen again and repeat what you hear.

## LEARN TO

### SUPPORT YOUR VIEWPOINT

**2** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Start with the words given.

**1** The latest research has found that profiles on social networking sites are accurate descriptions of people's personalities.  
According \_\_\_\_\_.

**2** Kids still enjoy dolls, electric train sets and Lego.  
Toys like \_\_\_\_\_.

**3** Japan is one of many countries where fish is an important part of the diet.  
In many countries, for instance \_\_\_\_\_.

**4** People are said to be attracted to partners who look like them.  
Apparently, people \_\_\_\_\_.

**5** There is no evidence that coffee increases long-term memory.  
As far as I know, \_\_\_\_\_.

**6** Media studies, Sports studies and Dance are examples of 'soft' subjects and are no longer being offered in some colleges.  
'Soft' subjects such \_\_\_\_\_.



## GRAMMAR VERB TENSE REVIEW

- 1** Complete the article with the past simple, present perfect simple or present perfect continuous forms of the verbs in brackets.

### Grandmother passes driving test on 950th attempt

Cha Sa-soon <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (want) to drive for years and last week she <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (move) a step closer to that dream: she <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) the written exam for a driving licence on her 950th attempt.

'I <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (try) to pass this test for over four years,' said the sixty-eight-year-old grandmother. 'And now I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (finally do) it. Over the past two years a lot of people <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) me I'm crazy, but I don't mind. If you have a dream, you can't give up.' She <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (become) a bit of a legend at the testing centre. 'It <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) difficult to see her fail so many times,' said the centre director. 'And we <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (hope) that sooner or later she would get through. She'll be missed, that's for sure,' he <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (add). 'A day without Cha is like a day without our favourite granny.'

Mrs Sa-soon <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) over five million Korean won on fees so far; now she just needs to pass the practical test and after she <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) that she'll be given a licence.

- 2** Match the sentence halves.

- 1 I've never seen snow
- 2 I'd never seen snow
  - a) until I went to Austria.
  - b) in my life.
- 3 I couldn't find a job
- 4 I haven't been able to find a job
  - a) after university.
  - b) since university.
- 5 No one has seen her
- 6 She was last seen
  - a) a week ago.
  - b) in the past week.
- 7 I've been seeing a therapist
- 8 I've seen a therapist
  - a) three times now.
  - b) regularly.
- 9 Many students have been arriving late
- 10 Many students arrived late
  - a) recently.
  - b) the other day.
- 11 I thought I understood this
- 12 I've understood everything
  - a) so far.
  - b) before now.

## VOCABULARY REVIEW

- 3** Complete the sentences with the correct words or phrases.

- 1 a people person/down-to-earth
  - a) Lena's a \_\_\_\_\_: she loves talking to everyone she meets.
  - b) Tessa will always tell you what she thinks, she's very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 awkward/embarrassed
  - a) The article is called 'Top health questions you are too \_\_\_\_\_ to ask'.
  - b) I was with my husband when we ran into his ex-wife. It was very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 relieved/impressed
  - a) Beth thought she'd lost her passport so she was incredibly \_\_\_\_\_ to find it.
  - b) The boss seemed \_\_\_\_\_ with my work on the report and he's giving me tomorrow off.
- 4 non-refundable/two-for-one
  - a) The \_\_\_\_\_ deal is only available on Monday evenings.
  - b) A \_\_\_\_\_ deposit is required when booking the holiday.
- 5 monitor/keep track of
  - a) When I'm working on a painting I never \_\_\_\_\_ the time. It drives my wife crazy.
  - b) We're going to try you on this new treatment and we'll \_\_\_\_\_ your progress carefully.
- 6 identify/deterrent
  - a) Are the fines working as a/an \_\_\_\_\_ to pollution?
  - b) Can full body scanners at airports \_\_\_\_\_ illegal products coming into the country?
- 7 illegal/unethical
  - a) Hunting elephants is \_\_\_\_\_ but hunting deer is allowed with a permit.
  - b) Buying an essay from the internet and saying you wrote it is totally \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 disturbing/outrageous
  - a) It was absolutely \_\_\_\_\_ that the workers were told of their job losses by text message.
  - b) I found the programme about child beauty competitions slightly \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 irresponsible/reasonable
  - a) I think it's \_\_\_\_\_ to refuse to pay for the food – no one could eat it.
  - b) Lending money to people who can't afford to pay it back is just \_\_\_\_\_.

- 4 A** Look at the underlined sounds in each group. Circle the word with the different sound.

- 1 authority, nervous, awkward
- 2 identify, crime, relieved
- 3 outrageous, information, decrease
- 4 witty, permit, disappointing
- 5 non-refundable, urban, frustrated

- B**  **R1.1** Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

**GRAMMAR** DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUESTIONS

**5** Change the direct questions into indirect questions.

- 1 What were you like ten years ago?  
Can you tell \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 How do you think you've changed?  
I'd be interested \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 What have you done that you are most proud of?  
Would you mind telling \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 Is it possible for a person to stay the same all his life?  
I wonder \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Who has influenced you the most?  
Could you tell \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 Would you like to direct a movie yourself?  
I was wondering \_\_\_\_\_.

**VOCABULARY PLUS** WORD BUILDING: NOUNS

**6** Find and correct the mistakes in the formation of the words in bold.

## The worst day of my life

My first solo piano concert in the music academy – it should have been the best day of my life. Of course, I felt a touch of <sup>1</sup>**anxious** before the performance and I arrived early only to find that they had replaced the piano that I had practised on with a different one. The new piano wasn't bad, but because of my <sup>2</sup>**nervous** and <sup>3</sup>**frustrated** I made a lot of mistakes. I was very <sup>4</sup>**disappointment** in myself and it was all very <sup>5</sup>**embarrassment**. Afterwards there was a lot of <sup>6</sup>**awkward** at the reception, since people didn't know what to say, I wished the earth would swallow me up.



- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1 _____ | 4 _____ |
| 2 _____ | 5 _____ |
| 3 _____ | 6 _____ |

**FUNCTION** POLITE ENQUIRIES

**7 A** Underline the correct alternative(s).

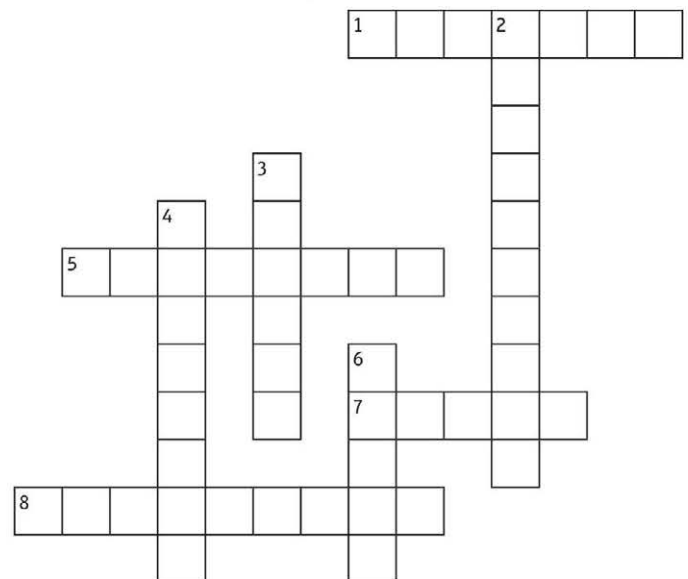
- 1 Yes, Mr Lawson. How can I *help/refund/answer* you?
- 2 I *was wondering/would wonder/wonder* whether I could move it to the week after.
- 3 And would there be any chance of *book/booking/to book* in a friend?
- 4 *Could you/Would you mind/I'd appreciate* telling me if that's going to cost more?
- 5 *Can you/Could you/Do you* tell me why I've been kept on hold for so long? It's really annoying.
- 6 I'd *appreciate it/thank you/be grateful* if you could put it in an email.

**B** Match replies a)–f) to enquiries 1–6 above.

- a) The computers are extremely slow today. I'm very sorry.
- b) Just a moment. Sorry, you've just taken the last place.
- c) Of course. I'll confirm all the details straightaway.
- d) Sorry to keep you. That will be 250 euros extra.
- e) I'm calling to enquire about a booking I made last week.
- f) Bear with me a minute. Yes, that booking is transferable.

**VOCABULARY** ISSUES

**8** Read the clues and complete the crossword.



**Across**

- 1 An issue about principles of what is right and wrong.
- 5 A problem relating to trade, industry and the management of money.
- 7 This problem happens in or is related to the countryside.
- 8 This social issue relates to the government, politics and public affairs of a country.

**Down**

- 2 A problem that relates to industry or the people working in it.
- 3 This issue affects or includes the whole world.
- 4 These issues happen in one particular country and do not involve any other countries.
- 6 A problem relating to towns and cities.



**VOCABULARY PLUS** VERBS/NOUNS WITH THE SAME FORM

**9 A** Complete the news reports with the correct form of the words in the box.

decrease research import desert produce  
fine record project appeal permit

A group of rock stars are <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ for people to fund a new <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ aimed at preventing malaria. Recent medical <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ shows there is a dramatic <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ in the disease when malaria nets are provided for families.

Fifty-two tourists have been rescued from the <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ near the Step Pyramid in Egypt after temperatures reached 49 degrees Celsius – the highest level ever <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ in the area. The tourists were stranded when their bus broke down. The group's tour operator has been arrested for failing to obtain a <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to conduct business in the area and has been ordered to pay a <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.

And in business, a number of European countries are planning to cut <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ from the United States as trade tensions continue. The USA has recently increased taxes on <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ coming from abroad to an all-time high.

**B** **R1.2** Listen or read the audio script on pages 75–76 to check.

**C** **R1.3** Underline the stress in words 1–10. Then listen and check.

**GRAMMAR** THE PASSIVE

**10** Complete the articles with the active or passive form of the verbs in the boxes.

think score complete ask

## Improve your IQ

In a recent experiment, two groups of people <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to spend time writing down some sentences, one group about a typical university professor and the other about a football hooligan. They then <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ a trivia test. The result: the 'professor' group <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ much higher than the other group. It <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ that this is due to 'priming' the brain in a positive way to get it to think more intelligently.

cause film predict ask

## Together forever?

In an experiment which is being carried out in the USA, married couples <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ having a conversation. They <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to discuss topics that <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ some friction in their relationship in the past. Based on just several minutes of the material, it can <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ with high accuracy who will still be together in fifteen years and who will divorce.

find give face design

## CARE BEARS FOR THE ELDERLY?

In the coming years, many countries <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the challenge of an aging population and a shortage of nurses. The Japanese-produced Robo-bear <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to help with tasks such as lifting and moving patients. The first human-shaped robots <sup>11</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to be too frightening for patients and so now the Robo-bear <sup>12</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the head of a friendly cartoon bear.

**FUNCTION** OPINIONS

**11** Put the words in the correct order.

1 your / I / but / point, / see

2 of / in / that / favour / I'm

3 with / don't / you / agree / I

4 extent, / certain / a / to / but / agree / I

5 not / still / I'm / convinced

6 what / mean / I / see / you

7 not / sure / so / I'm

## CHECK

Circle the correct option to complete the sentences.

- 1 Do you know \_\_\_\_\_?  
a) she's going b) whether she's going  
c) where is she going
- 2 Sign up for the classes as soon as you can – there is \_\_\_\_\_, so do it as soon as possible.  
a) limited enrolment b) fill in your details  
c) free trial
- 3 A: Your clothes are soaking wet!  
B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ in the rain.  
a) walked b) 've walked c) 've been walking
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ violence is a growing problem in times of unemployment.  
a) Domestic b) Economic c) Global
- 5 They \_\_\_\_\_ the report for days and it's still not finished.  
a) 've been writing b) 've written  
c) 've been written
- 6 Could you tell me \_\_\_\_\_?  
a) what means that b) what that means  
c) what does that mean
- 7 I'm phoning \_\_\_\_\_ a course.  
a) to enquire about b) about enquiring  
c) enquire about
- 8 Corruption isn't only deeply \_\_\_\_\_, it's also \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) disturbing/irresponsible b) reasonable/unethical  
c) disturbing/unethical
- 9 We need to \_\_\_\_\_ all their comings and goings over the next twenty-four hours.  
a) keep track of b) surveillance c) permit
- 10 I felt some \_\_\_\_\_ when I couldn't make myself understood in Spanish.  
a) frustrating b) frustration c) frustrated
- 11 Teachers want \_\_\_\_\_ what students don't like.  
a) to tell b) to be told c) being told
- 12 I hate speaking in public – I always get very \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) nerves b) nervousness c) nervous
- 13 I \_\_\_\_\_ Rita recently. Is she OK?  
a) didn't see b) haven't yet seen c) haven't seen
- 14 A: What \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: She's great! I really like her.  
a) 's your new boss like b) does your new boss like  
c) 's like your new boss
- 15 My mum was \_\_\_\_\_ thrilled to hear the news.  
a) very b) fairly c) absolutely
- 16 I \_\_\_\_\_ ten cups of coffee and it's only noon.  
a) had b) 've had c) 've been having
- 17 A: They really shouldn't have closed the school.  
B: I agree \_\_\_\_\_, but there were good reasons for it.  
a) for a certain extent b) to a certain extent  
c) to a certain point
- 18 The president's \_\_\_\_\_ for the early release of the hostages has not been successful.  
a) project b) appeal c) record
- 19 Some say that a guard dog is the best \_\_\_\_\_ to crime.  
a) deterrent b) monitor c) access
- 20 We've been very lucky \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) yet b) already c) so far
- 21 They found out that all their movements \_\_\_\_\_ by CCTV cameras.  
a) were being monitored b) were monitoring  
c) have monitored
- 22 Would there be \_\_\_\_\_ holding my place?  
a) any chance for b) any chance of  
c) any chance
- 23 She's been feeling a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ about the new job – that's why she can't sleep.  
a) amusement b) anxiety c) creativity
- 24 \_\_\_\_\_ the minimum voting age being decreased to sixteen.  
a) I totally disagree b) I'm against  
c) I see your point
- 25 The most \_\_\_\_\_ way forward seems to be to organise a meeting to discuss the issue calmly.  
a) reasonable b) irresponsible c) outrageous
- 26 The murderer \_\_\_\_\_ yet.  
a) hasn't caught b) wasn't caught  
c) hasn't been caught
- 27 There are lots of homeless people sleeping in the streets. It's the capital city's greatest \_\_\_\_\_ problem.  
a) industrial b) rural c) urban
- 28 He always knows a good joke, he's \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) a good laugh b) a computer geek  
c) down-to-earth
- 29 You got the highest mark in the exam? I'm really \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) relieved b) anxious c) impressed
- 30 He \_\_\_\_\_ once last week.  
a) hasn't visited b) didn't visit c) has visited

RESULT /30



## GRAMMAR

## NARRATIVE TENSES

## 1 A Underline the correct alternative.

- One day the old man *fish*ed/*was fishing* as usual when he *saw*/*was seeing* something shiny in the water.
- In 1995 Ella *was teaching*/*taught* in the Sudan and *became*/*had become* well known locally as the 'Canadian lady'.
- I'd *known*/*'d been knowing* Javier for many years and when I *read*/*was reading* he was in prison I knew there must be a mistake.
- He *noticed*/*was noticing* that someone *had left*/*had been leaving* a briefcase on the park bench.
- The Prince *had been searching*/*was searching* in the forest for over ten hours and *began*/*was beginning* to lose hope.
- Ella *had looked*/*had been looking* through old photo albums all morning when she *heard*/*was hearing* a knock on the door, and that moment inspired the lyrics to her greatest hit.
- By that evening the children *were*/*had been* exhausted and hungry because they '*d walked*/*'d been walking* in the forest all day with nothing to eat.
- We '*d driven*/*'d been driving* 30 km when the engine suddenly stopped; someone *took*/*had taken* most of the petrol out of the car, someone who wanted us dead.

**B** Which of the sentences above do you think come from: a detective story (D), a traditional folk tale (F) or a biography of someone's life (B)?

**2** Complete the sentences with the past perfect simple or the past perfect continuous form of the verbs in brackets. If both are possible, use the past perfect continuous.

- In the morning everything was white because it \_\_\_\_\_ (snow) all night.
- 'How long \_\_\_\_\_ (the victim/come) to this club?' Logan asked.
- My brother was furious because I \_\_\_\_\_ (break) his MP3 player.
- How much money \_\_\_\_\_ (you/make) by the time you were twenty?
- I had a sore throat because I \_\_\_\_\_ (sing) all evening.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (she/ever/do) anything like that before?
- They \_\_\_\_\_ (not plan) to move, but a flat became available suddenly.
- The computer \_\_\_\_\_ (make) strange noises since the installation of the new software.

**3 A** Complete the news story with the correct form of the verbs in the box. There may be more than one possibility.

fail rush begin bring feel realise  
sit seem overhear explain climb  
use change tell

## SPIDER-MAN SAVES THE DAY



An eight-year-old boy has been rescued by an enterprising Bangkok firefighter.

The boy from Thailand is autistic\* and  
1 \_\_\_\_\_ very nervous before  
his first day of school but initially he  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ to be OK.

However, during the first lesson his teacher  
3 \_\_\_\_\_ something to the  
class when she 4 \_\_\_\_\_ that  
the boy 5 \_\_\_\_\_ out of the  
window. 'He 6 \_\_\_\_\_ just  
outside the window with his legs swinging  
over the edge.'

The rescue services were called in when the  
boy's mother 7 \_\_\_\_\_ (also)  
to get the boy down. Everyone

8 \_\_\_\_\_ to run out of ideas  
when one of the firefighters, Somchai Yoosabai,  
9 \_\_\_\_\_ the boy's mother  
talking about her son's love of superheroes.

The quick-thinking fireman

10 \_\_\_\_\_ back to the fire  
station and 11 \_\_\_\_\_ into his  
Spider-Man costume. (Until then, Mr Somchai  
12 \_\_\_\_\_ the costume  
to make school fire drills more interesting.)

'I 13 \_\_\_\_\_ him, "Spider-Man is  
here to rescue you. No monsters are going to attack  
you."' The sight 14 \_\_\_\_\_ a  
smile to the youngster's face and he immediately  
walked into his rescuer's arms.


\*A person who is autistic has a learning disability; it's difficult for them to communicate and form relationships.

**B** 3.1 Listen to the news story above. For each verb 1–14 underline the main stressed syllable and write any weak forms: (/ə/ or /ɪ/).

**C** Listen again and read the news story at the same time as the speaker. Pay attention to the stress and weak forms in the verbs.



## LISTENING

**4 A**  **3.2** According to research, there are only seven types of stories or 'plots'. Match plots 1–7 with descriptions a)–g). Then listen and check your ideas.

- |                          |           |
|--------------------------|-----------|
| 1 overcoming the monster | 5 comedy  |
| 2 rags to riches         | 6 tragedy |
| 3 the quest              | 7 rebirth |
| 4 voyage and return      |           |

- a) The hero/heroine goes on a long, dangerous journey to achieve a goal.  
 b) A hero/heroine defeats a terrifying beast and saves others or wins a reward.  
 c) After misunderstandings and confusion, everything ends happily. It doesn't have to be funny but it often is.  
 d) A person leaves home and goes to a strange place. After adventures, he/she comes back.  
 e) Someone is in a terrible situation and then returns to happiness or is freed, often by the power of love.  
 f) An ordinary person discovers special talents or beauty in himself/herself and often gains great wealth.  
 g) A character follows a course of action which destroys him/her. This story always has a bad ending.

**B** Listen again. Which plot are the following connected to?

- |                     |       |
|---------------------|-------|
| 1 computer games    | _____ |
| 2 Superman          | _____ |
| 3 Romeo and Juliet  | _____ |
| 4 detective stories | _____ |
| 5 humour            | _____ |
| 6 <i>Lost</i>       | _____ |
| 7 losing money      | _____ |

## VOCABULARY

### SAYINGS

**5** Complete the sayings. Use the prompts to help you.

- 1 We may fail but we won't know unless we try.  
As they say, '*nothing / venture / gain*'.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Sue lost her job recently but *cloud / silver / lining*  
and now she's got a better one.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Li always gave money to a beggar and one day the  
beggar saved him from a mugger. It's certainly  
true that *go / around / come / around*.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I'm learning to bargain in markets.  
I've decided, *Rome / do / Romans / do*.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 No more second-hand computers for me – this  
one keeps breaking down. *Once / bite / twice / shy*.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## WRITING

### A STORY

**6 A** Read the story. Which saying 1–3 does the story illustrate?

- 1 Every cloud has a silver lining.
- 2 What goes around comes around.
- 3 Once bitten twice shy.

Once, as a lion was sleeping, a mouse passed by and <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ woke him up; <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the lion was angry and wanted to eat the mouse. The mouse <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ said she was very sorry and promised to help the lion in the future. The lion laughed <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ at this, but let her go because she had made him laugh.

Months later, the mouse <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ got her chance to help the lion when he was tied to a tree by some hunters. When the lion roared, <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the mouse was nearby and came running. She tried to eat through the rope; it was very thick, but <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ she ate through it <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ and freed the lion. And the moral of the story is ...



**B** Complete the story in Exercise 6A with adverbs from the box or adverbs of your own.

stupidly fortunately naturally eventually  
immediately finally completely loudly

**C** Use the notes below to write the story (80–100 words). Use at least three adverbs from Exercise 6B to make your story more interesting.

The crow and the water pot: thirsty crow – find – water pot – water at the bottom – can't reach; at first – stare at pot – try to think what to do; clever plan – drop – small stones – one by one – water rise – top – crow drink; moral: 'Necessity is the mother of invention.'





## VOCABULARY

### ADJECTIVES FOR STORIES

**1** Put the letters in bold in the correct order to make adjectives. The first letter is underlined.

- The film ending was very **rdaicmta** dramatic – I could hardly watch it.
- That play was absolutely **hrailoisu** absolutely.  
I nearly cried with laughing.
- The life of Gandhi is very **isnrinigp** insureringp.
- I found that poem about war very **tpoiangn** thpoemabout war very trpoiangn.
- Jane is very **tnnseei** tnnueei – she's very focused when she speaks to you.
- Brian finished his 3,000 word film review last night – that's **kareblmear** kareblmear!
- I really liked the end of the film, the special effects were **dibleeincr** dibleeincr.
- The story of the children was very **gimonv** gimonv – it nearly made me cry.

## GRAMMAR

### I WISH, IF ONLY

**2 A** Complete the survey results with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. In some sentences you need to make the verb negative.

no regrets

HOME

NEWS

SURVEY

SEARCH

### Regrets, we've had a few ...

A survey of over-30s suggests that many people share the same regrets about the past. Some of the results are unsurprising, but others are unexpected. The top regrets are:

- One in ten people wishes they <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (work) abroad at some stage in their life.
- Just under a quarter of people wish they <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (save) more money in their twenties.
- A quarter of people wish they <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) smoking.
- Nearly a third of people wish they <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (pay) more attention at school.
- One in three people wishes that they <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (get married) so young.
- Many people wish they <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) full-time education so early and regret that they didn't go to university.
- Almost a half of people wish they <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) a musical instrument.
- The top regret of all? Nearly half of people wish they <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) more when they were younger.

**3 A**  **3.3** Listen and underline the alternative you hear.

- I wish *I had*/I'd had more money.
- I wish I'd/you'd worked harder at school.
- I wish *it would stop*/it had stopped raining.
- If only we've/'d told her.
- If only we went/'d gone to the party.
- If only you'd/hadn't turned it off.

**B** Listen again and repeat. Pay attention to the stress and the contractions: 'd /əd/ and hadn't /'hædn̩t/.

**4** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use between two and five words including the word given.

- She can't stand the way the press keep asking her about her private life.  
STOP  
She wishes the press \_\_\_\_\_ about her private life.
- I'd prefer to be at home right now; it's too cold here.  
HOME  
I wish \_\_\_\_\_ right now; it's too cold here.
- It's terrible – we owe so much money!  
ONLY  
If \_\_\_\_\_ so much money.
- They didn't tell him the cost before he started the treatment.  
TOLD  
If \_\_\_\_\_ him the cost of the treatment before he started it.
- I hate it when you interrupt me.  
ME  
I wish \_\_\_\_\_.
- That's a great idea! Why didn't I think of it?  
WISH  
I \_\_\_\_\_ of that idea.
- Wayne wishes he'd kept his temper.  
KEPT  
If only Wayne \_\_\_\_\_ his temper.
- I can't see anything from here.  
SEE  
If only \_\_\_\_\_ from here.
- Unfortunately, we don't have enough time.  
MORE  
If \_\_\_\_\_ time.
- You just didn't listen to me!  
LISTENED  
I wish \_\_\_\_\_ to me!

**B** Tick the items you also regret.

## READING

### 5 A Read the article and answer the questions.

- 1 What is the challenge each person faces?
- 2 How do they manage in their professions?

#### Our series on people who have achieved success in their field in the face of extraordinary challenges

For more than thirty years, soprano **Janine Roebuck** has delighted audiences with her singing in opera and musical theatre. For most of that time she has kept a closely guarded secret: she is profoundly deaf.

Janine comes from a family with hereditary deafness. At first she thought she had escaped the disability but at university she was diagnosed with progressive loss of hearing and was advised to give up her dream of a singing career. However, Janine decided to hide the truth from fellow musicians. Janine believed that she would not be employed as a singer if people knew about her disability because they would see it as a major problem. So she developed coping strategies to enable her to perform. When she sang with another person, she watched their breathing so that she could come in at the right time. She felt vibrations from the music and occasionally she asked her fellow performers to tap the beat on her back.

Now Janine has decided to reveal the truth. Instead of being terrified of being found out, the singer is proud of her achievements and is using her story as an example to encourage other people with disabilities. As the word about Janine's deafness spreads, responses include astonishment and admiration. One conductor turned to the orchestra after she sang and told them she was deaf. Their applause delighted her.

If you listen to **Dean Du Plessis** on the radio you will hear an articulate sports commentator with a comprehensive knowledge of cricket. It's incredible then to realise that Zimbabwean Du Plessis has never actually seen a game because he has been blind from birth.



How does he do it? He says his heightened sense of hearing compensates for his lack of sight. He uses microphones placed around the ground to help. Dean listens to the sound of the players during the game. He can tell who is who by the sound they make when they hit a ball or run across the pitch. Each player runs differently, for example, some players run in a particular way or use more effort than others. He also listens to the sounds when the bat strikes the ball, as well as the crowd.

Born near Harare, Zimbabwe, Du Plessis was lucky enough to attend the famous Worcester School for the Blind in South Africa. At school, much to the annoyance of his schoolmates, he would stay up late in the evening and do commentaries alongside the radio. One evening a teacher overheard him commentating and told him to take it up as a profession because he was exceptionally good at it.

In 2001 Dean tried out with the microphone at Harare Sports Club and since then has never looked back. His passion and knowledge make him enormously popular with listeners and leave visiting teams and his co-commentators awestruck.

### B Who do you think said the following: Janine (J) or Dean (D)?

- 1 It was a terrible blow to me.
- 2 It can be a sharp crack or a quieter sound.
- 3 Until then I thought I was one of the lucky ones.
- 4 Your other senses become more acute.
- 5 I refused to give up.
- 6 Why now? Well, with age you don't really care so much.

C Try to complete the collocations below. Then read the text again to check your ideas.

- 1 a \_\_\_\_\_ secret  
= a well-kept secret
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ deaf  
= completely deaf
- 3 to \_\_\_\_\_ a strategy  
= to invent and improve on a technique
- 4 to \_\_\_\_\_ the truth  
= to tell the truth after hiding it
- 5 a \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge  
= a complete knowledge
- 6 a \_\_\_\_\_ sense of hearing  
= increased sense of hearing

## VOCABULARY PLUS

### MULTI-WORD VERBS

### 6 A Complete the questions in the interview by adding *for*, *out*, *on*, *away*, *by* or *up*.

- A: So you were brought <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ by the ocean?
- B: Yes, when I was growing <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ I practically lived underwater.
- A: And when you started taking photos, you picked it <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ quickly?
- B: Yeah, I loved it and I was good at it. I dropped <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of college and went <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to look for a job that combined my two great loves.
- A: But at first you were unsuccessful at getting a job with the local companies.
- B: That's right and as time went <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ I began to think I'd never get a job. Then I remembered a photographer I'd always looked <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to. He was working at Global at that time.
- A: Why did you take <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ such a key position with Global then?
- B: I didn't, not at first. I was only an assistant on a documentary.
- A: So did your boss resign from his position?
- B: No. He was badly injured by a shark, so badly that he passed <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Shocking stuff.
- A: Oh, I'm sorry.
- B: That's OK. Because I really admired him I tried to bring all the things he stood <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ into my work: honesty, truth and realism. Now I get all the big films.

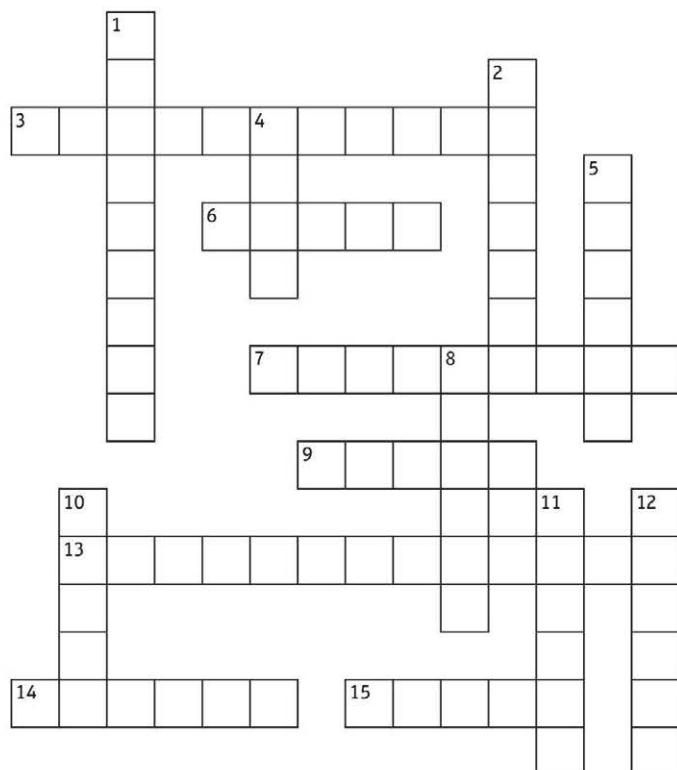
### B What is person B's job?



## VOCABULARY

## READING GENRES

## 1 Complete the crossword.



## Across

- 3 A best-selling film.  
 6 A webpage where people take part in online discussions is a website \_\_\_\_\_.  
 7 This website has facts and information about many different subjects.  
 9 A written story about fictional characters.  
 13 A book that someone writes about their own life.  
 14 A book that tells you how to do something, especially how to use a machine.  
 15 A short message on a social media website.

## Down

- 1 The story someone writes about someone else's life.  
 2 A piece of writing about a particular subject is an online \_\_\_\_\_.  
 4 A type of website containing information or opinions from a particular person or about a particular subject. New information or comments are added regularly.  
 5 A \_\_\_\_\_ magazine is about the behaviour and private lives of famous people.  
 8 Poems in general.  
 10 Japanese comics, often action-adventure, which are read by all ages.  
 11 The latest online news on an event or person is a social media \_\_\_\_\_.  
 12 The words of a song.

## FUNCTION

## EXPRESSING LIKES AND DISLIKES

## 2 A Complete B's part in each conversation.

- 1 A: What did you think of the book?  
 B: <sup>1</sup>Well, / not / big fan / travel books

A: Oh, why's that?

B: <sup>2</sup>just / not / get into / all the description

- 2 A: I hear Nick's enjoying his new school.

B: <sup>3</sup>Yes, what / he / love / about it / be / that they do / lot of sport

A: I didn't know he liked sport.

B: <sup>4</sup>Oh, yeah. / He / be / really into football / moment

- 3 A: Why don't you like barbecues?

B: <sup>5</sup>not / stand / when the meat / not / cooked properly

## B ▶ 3.4 Listen and check your answers.

## C ▶ 3.5 Listen and underline between two and five main stresses in B's part. Listen again and say B's part at the same time as the recording.

## LEARN TO

## SUMMARISE A PLOT

## 3 Complete the plot summary with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

wait fall (x2) deliver die have work  
 earn meet (x2) kick out (x2)

As is true of many of his stories, there is an autobiographical element, with the life of the main character, Irek, bearing many resemblances to that of the author, Andr  Hartowicz. In real life, Hartowicz, a political activist, <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ of university for organising protests against the administration. In the novel, the main character <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ of university for signing a letter criticising the examination system. Hartowicz, before he became famous, <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ as a waiter to pay his rent; in the story, Irek <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ money as a postman.


Hartowicz <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ his first wife at a restaurant; she <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ dinner with her husband while Hartowicz <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ on tables and they <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ in love at first sight. In the story, however, Irek <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ his wife-to-be when he <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ a letter to her informing her that her husband <sup>11</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ in battle. They too <sup>12</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ in love at first sight.

## LISTENING

- 1 A** Read about the signs of addiction to social networking. Which ones are physical symptoms?

### ARE YOU ADDICTED TO SOCIAL NETWORKING? THE SIGNS:

- forgetting to eat
- ignoring friends and family
- anxiety
- lying to spend time doing it
- very bad headaches
- always thinking about doing it
- sleep problems
- problems with school or work
- dry or aching eyes
- not taking proper breaks

- B**  **4.1** Listen to five people talking about their addictions. Write the number of the speaker (1–5) next to the signs in Exercise 1A. There may be more than one possibility.

- C** Listen again. Make two changes to each of the sentences (1–5) so they match what you hear.

- 1 I actually found it quite strange talking to their face because I'm much more used to interacting with people online.
- 2 It's the quizzes and other applications that interest me, like there's always a new quiz or test for something.
- 3 I would often miss lunch so I could continue chatting.
- 4 To be fair, she probably asked me directly first but I suppose I'd got so involved in the site that I didn't hear her.
- 5 When a chat message arrived, I couldn't resist. I'd stop what I was doing and join the chat.

## VOCABULARY

### FREE TIME

- 2 A** Put the letters in the correct order to make verbs. The first letter is underlined.

- 1 whtcis ffo \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 ocsufi no \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 llcih \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 rcerhgae \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 dniwpu \_\_\_\_\_

- B** Complete the text with the correct form of the words in Exercise 2A.

My childhood was fairly happy. Our family wasn't well off and we lived in a small crowded house but that was OK. We had lots of arguments and fights but a lot of fun, too. Everything changed at school though. I couldn't deal with the discipline. I was always getting into trouble. I wouldn't <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on the activities the teacher gave us – it wasn't that the class was boring but I just couldn't concentrate. I used to <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ just at the time that I needed to pay attention. Then of course, I couldn't keep up with the other students. Worse than that, because I was the only student who didn't know what was happening in class, the other students used to <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ so that I'd get angry. Of course the teachers punished me for shouting at the other students. They would send me out of the class to <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and calm down. As an adult, I still have these problems, but I know how to deal with them now. When I find myself losing focus, I go somewhere quiet to <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and get some mental energy back. Then I come back to the task again – in a way, it's a bit like what happened at school.



## GRAMMAR

### PRESENT AND PAST HABITS

- 3** Underline the correct alternative.

- 1 I *didn't use to*/*don't usually* spend time with lots of people – I prefer to be alone.
- 2 I *used to*/*would* think I was right about everything, but these days I'm *used to*/*'m usually* more prepared to admit I'm wrong.
- 3 I *used to*/*would* like my little sister but now she's grown up it's so annoying – she's *always*/*used to* using my stuff.
- 4 I *often have*/*'m often having* trouble understanding the local accent, so I think my English is worse than it *used to*/*would* be.
- 5 My friends and I would *take*/*taking* long walks and we used to *stay*/*staying* out late every night.
- 6 Before I moved to this country, I used to *eating*/*eat* early. Here everyone eats very late, so I'm always *starving*/*starved* by the time I eat in the evening.
- 7 You're *always*/*used to* leaving your boots at the bottom of the steps. You *used to be*/*are always being* really tidy.
- 8 I *used to*/*'m used to* write letters by hand, but now I'm *usually doing*/*usually do* everything on the computer.
- 9 **A:** Where's Dad?  
**B:** He'll *be*/*is always being* in the garden. He's *always gardening*/*used to garden* nowadays.
- 10 Before my divorce my wife *would*/*was used to* cook all my meals, but I generally *trying*/*try* to cook for myself now and I'm getting better!
- 11 **A:** I hate always *having*/*have* to wear a uniform!  
**B:** What did you *use*/*used to* wear in your last school?
- 12 Mark and Amy were really competitive, they *would*/*'ll often* fight over little things. They'll *still argue*/*are arguing* about small things even today.



#### 4 4.2 Listen to the phrases and underline the main stress in each sentence. Then listen and repeat.

- 1 I used to love it.
- 2 I didn't use to discuss it.
- 3 We'd always eat together.
- 4 We'd always argue.
- 5 He's not used to it yet.
- 6 They'll be in the park.
- 7 I was always getting into trouble.
- 8 He'll be at the office.

#### 5 Complete the forum answers with the correct forms of *used to* or *would* and the verbs in brackets. Use *would* where possible.

#### DO YOU FIND IT EASY TO CHANGE?

<b>JonB</b>	We moved to Canada earlier this year and we've found it difficult to cope with the cold winters. Before then we <sup>1</sup> _____ (live) in New Mexico where the winters <sup>2</sup> _____ (not be) so cold. The best piece of advice I was given was to invest in a very warm coat and hat!
<b>Alex</b>	Two months ago my doctor told me needed to eat less salt. Up to then I <sup>3</sup> _____ (put) about a spoonful of salt on a lot of things I ate. I <sup>4</sup> _____ (think) food was tasteless without it and I <sup>5</sup> _____ (enjoy) meals without salt. At first it was difficult but now whenever we eat out the food tastes too salty.
<b>Vicki 2015</b>	We've got a new baby. Just two weeks old. We love him to bits but he doesn't sleep at night. We <sup>6</sup> _____ (have) at least eight hours' sleep. Now we're lucky if we get two hours before he wakes us up. We <sup>7</sup> _____ (stay) in bed until mid-morning at the weekend – not now. In fact we don't have a weekend any more!
<b>Chloe OK</b>	I've just started my first job after university and it's been a shock to the system! At university I <sup>8</sup> _____ (get up) at about nine o'clock and now I have to be at work at nine. I also <sup>9</sup> _____ (work) when I felt like working. Not now – my boss says when I work and when I have a break.
<b>New Hubby</b>	I got married last month and we've moved into our first flat. I <sup>10</sup> _____ (live) alone, so it's strange for me to share everything with someone, even my wife. Before, I <sup>11</sup> _____ (do) the washing-up whenever I wanted to, but my wife hates the mess, so I have to do it right away. Sometimes I wonder if I <sup>12</sup> _____ (clean) my place regularly enough or if my wife is too tidy.

## WRITING

### AN OPINION ESSAY; LEARN TO USE LINKERS

#### 6 A Read the opinion essay. Which two paragraphs develop the positive side (P) of the argument and which paragraph develops the negative (N)?

#### A LIFELONG PARTNER SHOULD BE SOMEONE WHO HAS SIMILAR VALUES, PERSONALITY AND INTERESTS. DO YOU AGREE?

- 1 Can you imagine being married to someone who is very different from you, in terms of their personality, beliefs or interests? In my view, it would be a recipe for disaster!
- 2 a) I believe it is vital that two people in a long-term relationship share the same basic values. b) If one of you believes that it is acceptable to read the other person's diary or emails and the other one doesn't, this could cause real problems.
- 3 c) I feel it is important that people have similar personalities and interests. d) Imagine you are an extrovert person who loves going out but you are married to someone who prefers to spend their evenings at home. Or e) consider a situation where one of you spends hours on their hobby but neglects their partner. The resulting tensions could put a serious strain on the relationship.
- 4 f) It is true that people can learn a lot from their differences. g) An outgoing person might help their shyer partner become more comfortable in social situations and therefore have more varied experiences than they might otherwise. This can lead to both people developing much more than they might if both of them were similar.
- 5 h) Although it is said that 'opposites attract', it seems to me that the basis of a long-lasting relationship is having similar ideas, personalities and interests.



#### B Complete the essay with the linkers in the box. Write a)–h) next to the appropriate linker. Some can go in more than one position.

to sum up, for example, as another example, at the same time, in addition to this, furthermore, to start with, for instance,

#### C Write an opinion essay (200–250 words) on the following topic.

A true friendship is hard work. Do you agree?



## READING

**1 A** Read the article quickly and write the paragraph number next to topics a)–e).

- a) more recent developments
- b) history and background
- c) why you should read the article
- d) space tourism for people who aren't rich
- e) space hotels

**B** Read the article again and write true (T), false (F) or not given (NG) next to sentences 1–8. Underline the part of the article that helped you.

- 1 The writer thinks that business entrepreneurs are crazy.
- 2 Dennis Tito spent a week in space.
- 3 The Virgin Galactic flights stop at a space station but don't stay overnight.
- 4 The writer thinks that Tito should have bargained better.
- 5 The International Space Station doesn't have very luxurious facilities.
- 6 The Galactic Suite space hotel rotates to create gravity.
- 7 Some people think commercial space travel will be more and more competitive.
- 8 The writer recommends getting a job as an air steward or stewardess.

**C** Find words and phrases in the article that match definitions 1–8.

- 1 the kind of thing that something is made of (paragraph 2)
- 2 people who doubt whether something is true or right (paragraph 2)
- 3 started thinking about how to solve a problem (paragraph 3)
- 4 following a path which does not go fully around the earth (paragraph 3)
- 5 thought of (paragraph 4)
- 6 aiming at (paragraph 4)
- 7 the normal cost (paragraph 5)
- 8 aggressive (paragraph 5)

# SPACE TOURISM IS HERE!

**1** Fed up with the usual week-long holiday on the beach or walking through museums and old buildings that you only pretend to be interested in? Well, consider the ultimate in niche tourism: a new frontier, 'the final frontier' in fact: space tourism.

**2** It wasn't long ago that space hotels were the stuff of science-fiction and space tourism was a concept that only the craziest of business entrepreneurs talked about seriously. But since the 2001 flight of Dennis Tito, an American businessman, aboard a Russian Soyuz rocket, even sceptics have had to regard space tourism as an area with real commercial potential. In the first few years, a space tourist like Tito paid \$20 million for a trip which included a week-long stay on the International Space Station.

**3** It was only a matter of time before the entrepreneurs got on the case, and UK entrepreneur Sir Richard Branson and his Virgin Galactic company have begun offering online bookings for sub-orbital flights aboard their SpaceShipTwo. Tickets start at \$200,000, but are expected to come down in price to somewhere around \$20,000 – almost a bargain compared to what Tito paid. But the Virgin flights are only two-and-a-half hours, taking passengers just beyond the 100-kilometre altitude that is the internationally defined boundary between earth and space. Space tourists experience a few minutes of weightlessness and a view of the stars before heading back to earth and gliding in for a landing. A German company has been working on providing a similar service called Project Enterprise.

**4** What about accommodation? A number of companies have come up with plans to develop space hotels that can offer more luxurious surroundings than the International Space Station, which was designed for research purposes, not for tourists. The Space Island Group planned a ring-shaped spacecraft, much like the one in the film *2001: A Space Odyssey*, situated about 640 kilometres from earth. The ring would rotate in order to create a gravitational pull so that tourists don't spend their space holiday floating in the air. Galactic Suite Ltd was at one point targeting 2012 as the opening date for its luxury space hotel, with three-night stays going for \$4.4 million – but that includes six weeks of training! And at least one international hotel chain has also expressed an intention of getting into the space hotel business.

**5** So is there a hope for ordinary folk who have run out of earthly destinations for their holidays but can't afford the going price for a seat on SpaceShipTwo or a few nights at the Galactic Suite space resort? Space enthusiasts are optimistic and encourage any would-be space tourist to keep saving up and expect prices to keep coming down as competition gets more vicious. And for those who can't dream of putting together the money to meet the price tag, there's always the prospect, however unlikely, of getting a job in one of the space hotels. How does that sound for a year working abroad?





## VOCABULARY

### POSITIVE ADJECTIVES

#### 2 Add vowels to complete the adjectives.

The <sup>1</sup>st\_\_nn\_\_ng Dingle Peninsula, sticking out into the Atlantic Ocean, is one of the most <sup>2</sup>d\_\_l\_\_ghtf\_\_l regions in Ireland. Only 320 km from Dublin, it is famous for its <sup>3</sup>s\_\_gn\_\_f\_\_c\_\_nt archaeological sites and is one of the least densely populated areas in the country. Castlegregory (population 205!), located on the north coast between Tralee and Dingle is <sup>4</sup>p\_\_rf\_\_ct for walking. You can also wander along the <sup>5</sup>s\_\_p\_\_rb sandy beaches along the water's edge or explore the <sup>6</sup>\_\_xc\_\_pt\_\_n\_\_l Maharee islands. Why not try the <sup>7</sup>cl\_\_ss\_c walk up Mount Brandon, the second highest mountain in Ireland. From its summit, you can enjoy <sup>8</sup>br\_\_t\_\_ht\_k\_\_ng views of the Blasket Islands, a tiny group of islands just off the coast. However, due to its closeness to the Atlantic, you might experience bad weather conditions as the weather can change suddenly, so make sure you're warmly dressed!

## GRAMMAR

### FUTURE FORMS

#### 3 Correct the mistakes in the underlined phrases. One is correct.

A: Sue will take a year off work, but she hasn't decided yet.

B: What is she doing if she does take the year off?

A: She said she 's thinking to travel a bit.

A: Look, they say there 's likely to be bad weather tomorrow.

B: I suppose they 're postponing the outdoor concert then.

A: Maybe. I 'm phoning and asking before we 'll leave.

A: Their boat will get in just after nine.

B: So when 'are we going eating?

A: After they will arrive, I guess.

#### 4 Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets. Do not change the form of the word.

1 It will probably be hot tomorrow. (likely)  
It \_\_\_\_\_.

2 Chris wants to find a new job. (hoping)  
Chris \_\_\_\_\_.

3 I want to see Ingrid and then I'll leave. (before)  
I \_\_\_\_\_.

4 They're meeting at 3 o'clock tomorrow. (planning)

They \_\_\_\_\_.

5 Barcelona are certain to win the championship. (definitely)

Barcelona \_\_\_\_\_.

6 Don't be late. We've got to be at the theatre at eight. (due)

Don't be late. We \_\_\_\_\_.

7 There's a good chance that she'll get her work permit tomorrow. (likely)

She \_\_\_\_\_.

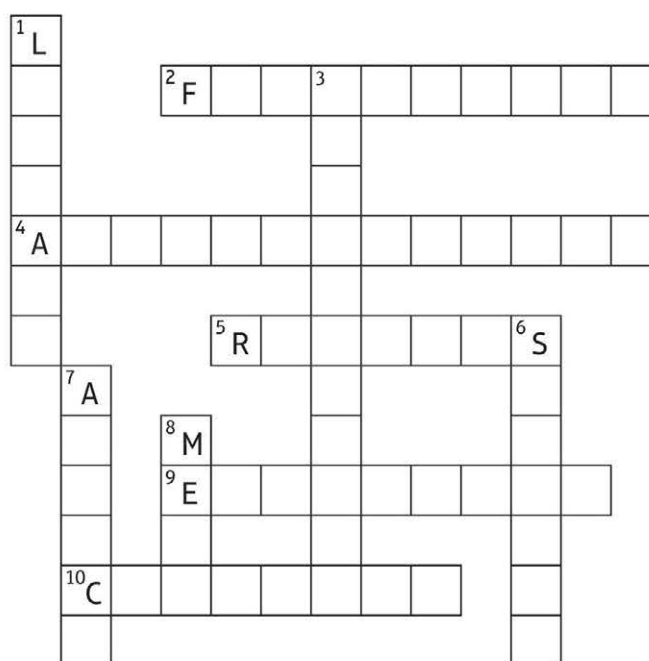
8 I'm not likely to see you tomorrow. (probably)

I \_\_\_\_\_.

## VOCABULARY PLUS

### UNCOUNTABLE AND PLURAL NOUNS

#### 5 Complete the crossword.



#### Across

2 a 4-star hotel has more of these and they're better

4 a place to sleep or stay for a while

5 what's left of an ancient building

9 e.g., in sport, a tennis racket, golf clubs

10 all the things in your bag

#### Down

1 suitcases

3 everything you find out when you ask questions

6 the view of natural features, for example out of a train window

7 suggestions

8 \_\_\_\_\_ of transport

## FUNCTION

### DESCRIBING PROCEDURES

#### 1 A Complete the rules for the game with the phrases in the box.

what happens after way the first thing key thing  
the point aim

Basically, the <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ it works is that you draw a grid of 5x5 squares on a piece of paper. There are two players and the <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ of the game is to complete the sequence 'SOS' in a straight line as many times as you can. So <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ you do is one of you writes an 'S' or an 'O' in one of the squares. Then the other player writes an 'S' or an 'O' in another square.

Whenever one of you completes an 'SOS', you get another turn and <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ is not to let your partner succeed because <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ is that one player gets an 'SOS' and then blocks the other player. It's easy to lose track of who's winning so the <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ is to keep score of who gets how many 'SOS's. Then, <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ you've finished (once the grid is full), the winner is the player with the most 'SOS's.



B ▶ 4.3 Listen and check your answers.

## VOCABULARY

### ABILITIES

#### 2 Find eight words or phrases for abilities in the wordsearch.

B	W	Y	W	E	R	A	T	I	N	V	E	W	F	H	J	K	L	A	S	I
K	A	G	O	O	D	S	E	N	S	E	O	F	H	U	M	O	U	R	P	N
M	G	W	F	D	S	H	M	L	K	J	P	M	N	E	R	T	I	N	G	G
N	G	F	B	L	S	A	W	Y	W	E	K	N	O	O	E	R	T	I	N	R
B	E	R	W	S	D	R	E	W	O	R	N	B	W	Y	W	E	R	T	I	E
F	R	W	E	R	T	P	G	T	C	O	O	L	H	E	A	D	E	D	Z	A
A	S	H	J	U	T	M	D	S	H	J	W	N	M	L	K	J	H	G	F	T
I	N	V	E	N	T	I	V	E	N	E	H	E	W	Y	W	E	R	T	I	S
Y	W	X	N	M	L	N	Y	P	S	R	O	V	E	W	U	L	D	S	H	H
F	H	R	G	O	O	D	W	I	T	H	W	O	R	D	S	P	K	X	S	A
J	G	K	F	H	J	K	L	H	S	D	F	G	H	J	S	R	W	E	R	P
U	N	D	E	R	S	T	A	N	D	H	U	M	A	N	N	A	T	U	R	E

#### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in Exercise 2.

- You need to call an electrician. I can't fix the light, I don't have the \_\_\_\_\_.
- I wouldn't tell Jeff any jokes, he doesn't have \_\_\_\_\_.
- Hey Carol, you're \_\_\_\_\_.  
Have you been going to the gym?
- That's a lovely poem, you're really \_\_\_\_\_.
- Jake's got a really bad temper, but Fatima is completely the opposite, she's very \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'm not very \_\_\_\_\_.  
I could never write a book, for example.
- Professor Cook has got the \_\_\_\_\_ of  
anyone I've ever met. He can solve maths problems really quickly.
- If you feel upset, you should speak to Belinda. She \_\_\_\_\_  
and she's a very good listener.

## LEARN TO

### USE MIRROR QUESTIONS

#### 4 A Write mirror questions to check the words or phrases in *italics*.

- A: Look up the idiom *under the key word*.  
B: Look up the idiom *where?*
- A: You should see *the deputy director*.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_
- A: I last spoke to her *on Christmas Eve*.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_
- A: You can use a question word *to clarify*.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_
- A: *The cast* is waiting backstage.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_
- A: The rain's *lashing down*.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_
- A: You'll find us *in the green room*.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_
- A: The *lectern* is too high.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_

B ▶ 4.4 Listen and check your answers.

C Listen again and underline the main stressed word in each question.

D Listen and repeat, paying attention to the stress and intonation.

Look up the idiom *where?*



## GRAMMAR NARRATIVE TENSES

- 1 Complete the story with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. There may be more than one possibility.

It was May 1997 and I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (think) it was going to be the last day of my life.

I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (study) archaeology in Greece with twelve other students for two months before that.

We <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (come) towards the end of our trip, there were only five days left, and that day we

<sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (look) at the underwater ruins of an ancient town off the beach at Pavlopetri.

As I recall, the ruins were about 200 metres off the beach. It <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) the night before and the water was still cool. Only half of us at a time

<sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (swim) out to the ruins because we <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (share) masks and snorkels so

we were taking turns to look at the ruins. After a while I <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) to feel tired and cold, so I <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) my friend Mike that

I <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (go) back to the beach. About halfway back to the beach, still in two-metre-deep water, I <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (realise) I was in trouble:

I was very cold, I couldn't move my arms and I <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (go) in and out of consciousness.

Fortunately, minutes earlier, Mike <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (realise) that something was wrong. He was a qualified lifeguard and he got me to the beach but

by then I <sup>14</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (shake) uncontrollably from hypothermia. Everyone <sup>15</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (massage) me to make me warm and only

stopped when I <sup>16</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (recover).



## VOCABULARY REVIEW

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct word or phrase.

- 1 grew up/looked up to
  - a) Gregor had always \_\_\_\_\_ his piano teacher.
  - b) Jack \_\_\_\_\_ in a nice area of north London.
- 2 inspiring/hilarious
  - a) I find the story of Nelson Mandela very \_\_\_\_\_.
  - b) That comedian was really \_\_\_\_\_. I laughed all through the show.
- 3 stands for/pick up
  - a) Danni has just started piano lessons. We're hoping he'll \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ OK.
  - b) Our restaurant's name \_\_\_\_\_ good quality food.
- 4 taken on/brought up
  - a) The company has \_\_\_\_\_ more than fifty new workers.
  - b) We were \_\_\_\_\_ by our grandparents after our parents passed away.
- 5 switched off/focused on
  - a) Eric wasn't interested in biology and \_\_\_\_\_ when the lecture started.
  - b) Increasingly, Naomi \_\_\_\_\_ her work instead of all her other responsibilities.
- 6 wound up/chilled
  - a) Ali \_\_\_\_\_ his brother and caused a fight.
  - b) Sam \_\_\_\_\_ with his wife after a long day at work.
- 7 superb/breathtaking
  - a) There are \_\_\_\_\_ views from the top of the hill.
  - b) The Crown hotel is a \_\_\_\_\_ place for a relaxing weekend.
- 8 classic/significant
  - a) The Jaguar e-type is a \_\_\_\_\_ car.
  - b) The team made a \_\_\_\_\_ breakthrough in finding a cure for the illness.
- 9 stunning/perfect
  - a) We want to find a house with a \_\_\_\_\_ view of the lake.
  - b) This house is absolutely \_\_\_\_\_ for a professional couple like yourselves.

- 3 A Look at the underlined sounds in each group. Circle the words and phrases with the different sound.

- 1 biography, wind up, chill
- 2 pick up, inspiring, lyrics
- 3 brought up, autobiography, drop out
- 4 hilarious, focus on, grow up
- 5 wikipedia, recharge, delightful
- 6 get on, switch off, moving

- B R2.1 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

**GRAMMAR** I WISH, IF ONLY

4 Complete the underlined phrases.

What phone and internet mistakes do you wish you could undo?



➤ <sup>1</sup>I wish / not post

a photo of myself in a swimming costume on a social networking site. When I went for an interview for a job, they'd attached it to my application form!

➤ I once emailed my first girlfriend when I was angry at my wife. <sup>2</sup>I / really / wish / I / not \_\_\_\_\_. My wife found out and she's never let me forget it.

➤ With hindsight, it was a bad idea to use the James Bond theme tune for my ring tone. <sup>3</sup>If / only / choose \_\_\_\_\_ something more sophisticated.

➤ I sent a joke text message to my boss. Thirty seconds after I'd sent it, I regretted it. <sup>4</sup>If / only / send \_\_\_\_\_. <sup>5</sup>Now / I / wish / I / delete \_\_\_\_\_ it.

➤ I recently joined a dating website and made the mistake of using a photo of myself from ten years ago. <sup>6</sup>If only / I / have \_\_\_\_\_ all my hair again!

➤ I wrote a rude email to a friend and I haven't heard from him since. I hope he emails me soon or <sup>7</sup>I / wish / he / phone / and / yell at / me \_\_\_\_\_. That would be better than waiting and wondering.

➤ An ex-boyfriend emailed me. Somehow I didn't get round to answering and the next I heard he'd re-married. <sup>8</sup>If only / I / reply \_\_\_\_\_ to his email, we might have got back together.

**FUNCTION** EXPRESSING LIKES AND DISLIKES

5 Complete the opinions with the words in the box.

a into get about on the can't what

- 1 I couldn't get <sup>into</sup> cooking with chillies. They're too spicy for my taste.
- 2 I hate steak when it's rare – I really don't like is the colour.
- 3 What I like olives is their salty taste, particularly on pizzas.
- 4 I absolutely stand snails. The thought of them makes me feel sick.
- 5 I'm really keen pasta, mainly because it's so quick to make.
- 6 I'm not big fan of cheese. It's something about the smell.
- 7 Cherries are my favourite fruit – thing I love about them is their taste.
- 8 I can't into chocolate as it's often too sweet for me.

**GRAMMAR** PRESENT AND PAST HABITS

6 Complete B's answers with the words in the box.

didn't wasn't would (x2) ask weren't work to

A: Do you mind people asking you about your childhood?

B: <sup>1</sup>No, I'm used it.

A: So, did you always want to be a singer?

B: Yes. <sup>2</sup>From the age of four I dress up and sing for my parents.

A: But after their divorce, you were brought up by your grandparents?

B: <sup>3</sup>That's right, but they used to having children around so I was sent away to school, which I hated. <sup>4</sup>I used to sitting still for so long.

A: But you did well in the end, didn't you?

B: Yes, eventually. <sup>5</sup>I used to the teacher what she wanted me to do and I also worked very hard.

A: Did anyone recognise your talent at that point?

B: <sup>6</sup>No, I use to enjoy the music classes so I hardly ever joined in. But then we got a new teacher. <sup>7</sup>He used to for a music publisher and he put my song *Sampling Love* on the internet.

A: And as they say, the rest is history.

B: <sup>8</sup>Yes, I often think about being a famous singer and now it's happened.



## GRAMMAR FUTURE FORMS

- 7 Complete the articles with an appropriate future form of the verbs in the boxes. There may be more than one possibility.

use become be likely think

## All charged up?

1 \_\_\_\_\_ you  
\_\_\_\_\_ of buying  
an electric car but are worried about  
the amount of time it takes to charge  
the batteries? All that  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ to change  
thanks to a discovery by scientists in  
the USA. The new batteries  
3 \_\_\_\_\_ lithium  
iron phosphate and  
4 \_\_\_\_\_ available  
within two years.

continue not keep lose break

## THIS YEAR ... OR MAYBE NEXT?

Happy New Year! Now the bad news:  
three out of four of us  
5 \_\_\_\_\_ our New Year  
resolutions by the end of January. Even worse,  
a quarter of us 6 \_\_\_\_\_  
our promises until the end of week one.  
'People's intentions are always good,' says  
the manager of a nation-wide chain of gyms.  
'They say they 7 \_\_\_\_\_  
weight and get fit. But  
8 \_\_\_\_\_ they  
\_\_\_\_\_ when it gets  
difficult? No, they give up.'

have ask talk meet

## Personal holiday planner

We 9 \_\_\_\_\_ at  
6 o'clock for a twenty-minute talk with  
out personal holiday planner.  
We 10 \_\_\_\_\_  
about holiday destinations. I'm  
11 \_\_\_\_\_ him  
about two or three places I've always  
wanted to visit, like Sweden or Lapland,  
and my partner wants to ask him about  
Panama and Costa Rica. I think he  
12 \_\_\_\_\_ a very  
difficult time getting me and my partner  
to agree.

## VOCABULARY PLUS UNCOUNTABLE AND PLURAL NOUNS

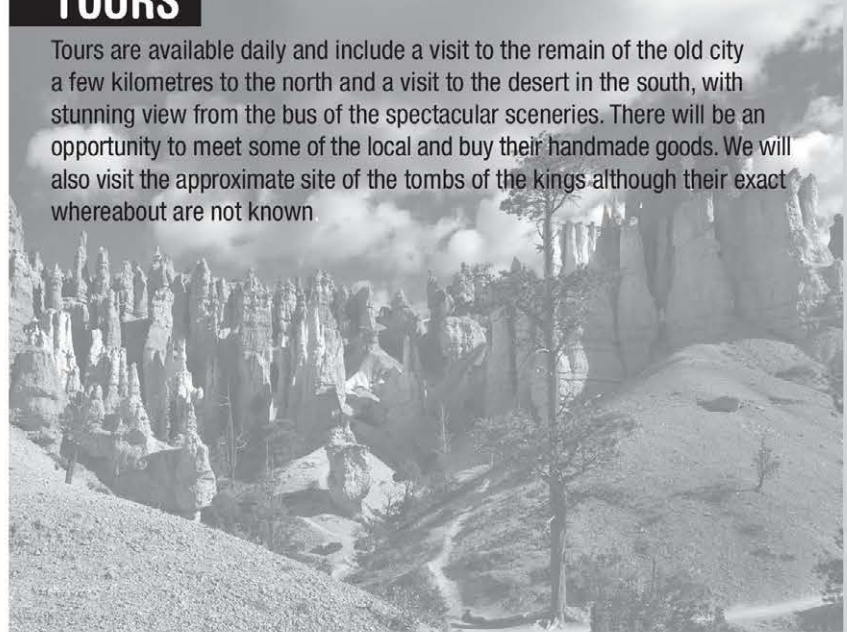
- 8 Add -s in eight places and remove it from six places. Make any other necessary changes to the spelling.

## TRAVEL

There is a maximum weight of twenty kilos for passengers' luggages. Security is strict at the airport and you will be asked to confirm that no one has interfered with the content of your bags. The airport is situated on the outskirts of the city and there are several mean of transports to get to the city centre. We recommend the airport bus as it is cheaper and more reliable than the taxis. Full informations about your accommodations can be found on our website. Note that all hotels are three-star and have facility such as laundry, TV in every room, and internet access. Electricities voltage is 220V and you will need an adaptor or European plug.

## TOURS

Tours are available daily and include a visit to the remain of the old city a few kilometres to the north and a visit to the desert in the south, with stunning view from the bus of the spectacular sceneries. There will be an opportunity to meet some of the local and buy their handmade goods. We will also visit the approximate site of the tombs of the kings although their exact whereabouts are not known.



## FUNCTION DESCRIBING PROCEDURES

- 9 Correct the mistakes in the underlined phrases.

A great steak makes a quick, tasty meal but is hard to get right. 1The first thing you do is making sure the steak is the right temperature. If it is frozen, then defrost it overnight. 2A point is to make sure the meat is at room temperature so that it cooks well throughout.



Next, pre-heat a heavy griddle pan over a high heat. 3Key thing is to ensure the pan is sufficiently hot, but not smoking, or the steak will be cooked unevenly. Meanwhile season the meat and brush it with a little oil. Put the meat in the pan and after you've cooked one side, turn it over. 4What you has to do is keep turning it or it can dry out.

5Basic, the way it works is that the meat is full of flavour, so never cut it to check if it's cooked. Right at the end, press the steak gently with your finger: rare should be soft, well done firm and medium in between. 6After you've remove the steak from the pan, cover it with foil and 'rest' it for a few minutes then the juices can run back through the steak. 7What it happens next is up to you. You can serve it with potatoes or salad or accompany it with a sauce. Enjoy!



## CHECK

Circle the correct option to complete the sentences.

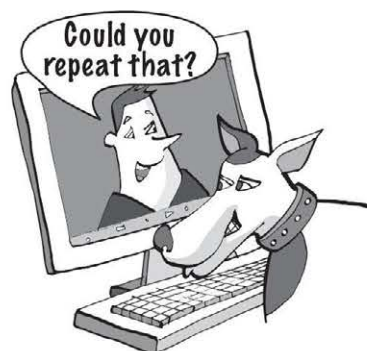
- 1 When I was young I \_\_\_\_\_ I could do anything.  
a) used to believe   b) would believe  
c) 'm used to believing
- 2 Have you read the new \_\_\_\_\_? It was written by his ex-wife.  
a) gossip   b) biography   c) autobiography
- 3 Do you ever wish you \_\_\_\_\_ back in time?  
a) would go   b) went   c) could go
- 4 Neil never gets angry with people, he's very \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) cool headed   b) good with words   c) inventive
- 5 If only I \_\_\_\_\_ my flared trousers – they're back in fashion now.  
a) hadn't thrown away   b) could keep  
c) didn't throw away
- 6 Are you used \_\_\_\_\_ spicy food?  
a) eat   b) to eat   c) to eating
- 7 Look, \_\_\_\_\_ the game and you might win it.  
a) focus on   b) recharge   c) wind up
- 8 Jason and Zena \_\_\_\_\_ together again after their very public row.  
a) won't probably work   b) probably won't work  
c) won't work probably
- 9 First \_\_\_\_\_ the leaflet, then you can stop for a coffee.  
a) you will finish   b) you to finish  
c) you are finishing
- 10 We're getting worried because they haven't \_\_\_\_\_ the present yet and it's nearly Lisa's birthday.  
a) brought up   b) picked up   c) take on
- 11 Then \_\_\_\_\_ that microwaves cause the food to vibrate quickly and produce heat.  
a) the thing happens   b) the thing is  
c) what happens is
- 12 They \_\_\_\_\_ living with the constant heat.  
a) wouldn't   b) weren't used to   c) didn't use to
- 13 \_\_\_\_\_ the photo, you can adjust it on your computer.  
a) After you've taken   b) After that you've taken  
c) After that you take
- 14 Have you found all of the missing \_\_\_\_\_?  
a) remain   b) equipment   c) outskirts
- 15 I \_\_\_\_\_ the job because I'm interested in working with animals.  
a) passed away   b) stood for   c) took on
- 16 You can get \_\_\_\_\_ views from the summit of the mountain.  
a) exceptional   b) significant   c) poignant
- 17 The special effects are so \_\_\_\_\_ you almost feel that you're in space too.  
a) moving   b) incredible   c) hilarious
- 18 Stop complaining and just \_\_\_\_\_ with the job!  
a) look up to   b) get by   c) get on
- 19 They \_\_\_\_\_ the house for an hour when it started raining.  
a) painted   b) had painted   c) had been painting
- 20 Neela felt relieved because she \_\_\_\_\_ the speech and could send it off to be checked.  
a) was writing   b) 'd written   c) 'd been writing
- 21 \_\_\_\_\_ move your money to another bank?  
a) Are you thinking   b) Are you hoping  
c) Are you planning to
- 22 What lovely flowers! \_\_\_\_\_ you had bought some for me too!  
a) I didn't wish   b) If only   c) Couldn't have
- 23 In the event of a leak, call a plumber – you don't have the \_\_\_\_\_ to stop the water going everywhere.  
a) know-how   b) sharp mind   c) sense of humour
- 24 I'd get her some flowers. She's \_\_\_\_\_ chocolates.  
a) couldn't get into   b) not a big fan of  
c) can't stand
- 25 What \_\_\_\_\_ around.  
a) goes around comes   b) bitten around shy  
c) a cloud around a silver lining
- 26 \_\_\_\_\_ shy.  
a) Once bitten, twice   b) When bitten, always  
c) Once bitten, always
- 27 The hotel is situated in a \_\_\_\_\_ location, right next to the sea.  
a) classic   b) significant   c) stunning
- 28 I can't put this lawnmower together. Where's the \_\_\_\_\_?  
a) manual   b) wikipedia   c) manga
- 29 \_\_\_\_\_ I like about the colour is it's so vibrant.  
a) The thing what   b) What   c) It's what
- 30 How many actors \_\_\_\_\_ before you chose Rob?  
a) had you seen   b) had you been seeing?  
c) were you seeing

RESULT /30



## LISTENING

1 A 5.1 Listen to the radio programme about the Ig Nobel Prize and number the pictures in the order they are mentioned.

A ☐B ☐C ☐D ☐

B Listen again and complete the descriptions of other Ig Nobel winners.

- Research into why pregnant women don't \_\_\_\_\_ over.
- Research into why dry spaghetti breaks into \_\_\_\_\_ pieces.
- A device that makes an annoying noise that only \_\_\_\_\_ can hear.
- A business suit that automatically \_\_\_\_\_ itself.
- A washing machine for \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

C Listen again and circle the best ending, a), b) or c).

- The name 'Ig Nobel' suggests:
  - a link to the Nobel prize.
  - that the prize is 'ignoble' or stupid.
  - two meanings at the same time.
- It is awarded for:
  - ridiculous research and inventions.
  - amusing but interesting inventions.
  - potentially major research.
- The alarm clock was awarded an Ig Nobel prize because:
  - it was good for the economy.
  - it helped people get up.
  - it meant people worked harder.
- Martha is doing research into:
  - how to stay dry in the rain.
  - how people get wet in the rain.
  - whether an umbrella or a raincoat is better in the rain.

## VOCABULARY

## CHANGE

2 A Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- John was finding it hard to adapt *to/at* the weather in the new country.
- Small amounts of radiation can have a positive effect *on/to* some cancer patients.
- Artificial intelligence will *transform/enable* the way we live.
- I can't believe you hit my car. You've caused a lot of damage *to/at* the back of it.
- It wasn't easy to adjust *at/to* life at university.
- Taking drugs can have devastating effects *on/with* people's lives.
- That bad publicity did a lot of harm *to/for* our sales.
- Putting classes online has enabled people to *access/accept* learning when and where they want.
- We have to *revolutionise/criticise* the way we produce energy – we can't rely on fossil fuels forever.

B 5.2 Listen and write the words and phrases next to the correct stress pattern.

adjust to   damage   access   transform   effect  
revolutionise   devastating   positive   enable  
do harm to   adapt to

Oo	_____	_____
oO	_____	_____
ooOoo	_____	_____
Oooo	_____	_____
oOo	_____	_____
Ooo	_____	_____

C Listen again and repeat.

## GRAMMAR

## ARTICLES

- 3 Complete the article with *a(n)*, *the* or – (no article).

## AN INVENTOR OR THE INVENTOR?

It's <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ well-known fact that <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ electric light was invented by Thomas Edison, but is it really true? Edison's light bulb, like many inventions, was <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ result of many scientists' work. <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ English scientist had made <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ simple electric light seventy years earlier and Edison's further development of <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ idea wouldn't have been possible without the work of his colleagues.

Similarly, the Wright brothers are generally credited with inventing the first successful airplane at <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ beginning of <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ twentieth century. Yet literally dozens of <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ inventors and scientists before that time might claim to have taken key steps in developing <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ sustained flight. For instance, <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Norwegian named Navrestad supposedly flew in a glider in 1825 and, in subsequent years, <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ advances were made all over the world. In fact, just before the Wright brothers' famous flight, <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ American named Langley flew over <sup>14</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Potomac River, a distance of about 800 metres.

It seems that <sup>15</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ person who not only achieves a particular feat but also records it, protects it and publicises it will be credited with the discovery.

- 4 Read the article. Cross out *the* in ten places where it is unnecessary.

## YOUR MILLION-DOLLAR IDEA

Do you want to join those people who have made a million from a simple idea? Then just follow these five tips:

- 1 Remember the saying 'necessity is the mother of the invention'. When the people need the things, sooner or later someone will come up with an idea to meet that need. It could be you!
- 2 Watch people and notice their habits. How do they do the everyday activities, such as answering the phone, handling the money or the credit cards, eating and drinking? Is there a way that one of the activities could be made easier?
- 3 When you have an idea, write it down. Draw a picture. Give it a name. This will help your mind work on the idea further.
- 4 Don't talk to the negative people about your ideas. The motivation is important for the creativity and negative people can kill it.
- 5 Talk to a friend about your ideas. Some of the most successful ideas emerge through the talking.



## VOCABULARY PLUS

### COMPOUND NOUNS

- 5 Complete the compound nouns with the words in the box.

through off look back down come side

- 1 Mobile phone access is possible almost everywhere but the down \_\_\_\_\_ is the increasing number of ugly antennas.
- 2 One positive out \_\_\_\_\_ of the availability of electronic media is a decrease in the amount of paper used.
- 3 The transistor was a major break \_\_\_\_\_ in the development of electronic devices.
- 4 In the early days of mobile phones, there was a trade- \_\_\_\_\_ between battery size and compactness.
- 5 The biggest draw \_\_\_\_\_ of the development of electronic communication has been that people see less of each other in person.
- 6 After the development of atomic weapons, the out \_\_\_\_\_ for human warfare became depressing and frightening.
- 7 The use of automated telephone response systems often leads to a communication break \_\_\_\_\_ between customers and providers.



## READING

- 1 A** Look at the words in the box. Which do you think are the five best words (B) and which are the five worst words (W) to use in an advertisement?

Safety	Deal	Quality	Results	Love
Client	Discover	Cheap	Health	Best

- B** Read the article and complete it with the words in the box above.

### THE TEN BEST AND WORST WORDS IN ADVERTISING

Everyone likes to get something for nothing, but the word 'free' has become a **big no-no** as it's sure to make people think of a product as second-rate. What are the words that are guaranteed to get a result? And what words should advertisers avoid using? Check out the five power words in advertising, and five others that advertisers should delete from their lexicons.

#### 😊 THE TOP FIVE

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ – Everybody wants it, everybody needs it and it's so hard to get. Just the mention of it catches people's attention and makes them want the product that seems to promise to deliver.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ – There's a bit of the explorer in all of us and while most people are **armchair explorers**, the sense that they are going to experience something new is irresistible.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ – This has always been important to consumers, but we've seen a clear trend since the 1980s to put physical and mental well-being **at the forefront**. Most people are too busy or too lazy to pay attention to their own and that's all the more reason to make them buy some via your product.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ – Just a mild suggestion that a product will keep the consumer's family out of danger – particularly if the advertiser can associate the product with protecting children – and most consumers will **dig deeper into their pockets** to pay out.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ – One advertising psychologist has said that the power of this word is in the association consumers make with their childhood and school; getting good grades was the goal then, and this word makes them think of that. And yes, they still want good ones.

#### ☹️ THE BOTTOM FIVE

- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ – Most people will **go to great lengths** to pay less for a product, but this is probably the worst word to communicate that that's what you offer. When it refers to price, it makes the product sound second-rate; unluckily, the word can also refer to quality.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ – Sure, it's OK to talk about the customer or consumer using this word, but consumers don't like to be referred to in such a technical, business-orientated way.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ – Similar to 'cheap', this word has associations with tricky used-car salesmen and products that aren't in fact worth spending money on.
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ – Only one product can really be described with this word and if everyone says theirs is, then who should the consumer believe?
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ – Another word that was once very much in fashion, but overuse has **made consumers numb** to its meaning. And who would say their product doesn't have it?

- 2** Match the meanings 1–6 with the phrases in bold in the article.

- 1 make extra effort for something you want badly \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 people who dream about doing something, but don't actually do it \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 try hard(er) to get money for something \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 something you should never do \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 a top priority \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 cause people not even to notice \_\_\_\_\_

## VOCABULARY

### ADVERTISING COLLOCATIONS

- 3** Complete the sentences. The first letter of each word is given.

- 1 We're *l* \_\_\_\_\_ our new product next month at the trade exhibition.
- 2 We *e* \_\_\_\_\_ the market with a new product.
- 3 Let's *r* \_\_\_\_\_ the price so more people can afford our goods.
- 4 Apple *d* \_\_\_\_\_ the smartphone market.
- 5 The technology company *b* \_\_\_\_\_ into the fashion market with smart clothes.
- 6 We've just decided on the price. We *s* \_\_\_\_\_ it so that it's similar to the competition.
- 7 We sponsor a lot of sporting events to *p* \_\_\_\_\_ our brand name.
- 8 The price of bread has *i* \_\_\_\_\_ by twenty-five percent recently.
- 9 When a celebrity says a product is good, they *e* \_\_\_\_\_ the product.
- 10 Sofex *r* \_\_\_\_\_ the price of their new colourful tablet – they are so popular people will pay more for them.
- 11 The new brand will be *a* \_\_\_\_\_ on TV, the internet and radio.
- 12 Our researchers can see a *g* \_\_\_\_\_ in the market.

## GRAMMAR

### REAL AND HYPOTHETICAL CONDITIONALS

**4** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use between two and five words including the word given.

- Without increasing the budget we can't put an advert on TV. **UNLESS**  
We can't put an advert on TV \_\_\_\_\_ the budget.
- Not many people use the shop because it closes at five o'clock. **LATER**  
If the shop \_\_\_\_\_, more people would use it.
- Could we get a discount by paying in cash? **SUPPOSING**  
\_\_\_\_\_ in cash, could we get a discount?
- Providing we're happy with your work, we'll give you a full-time contract. **LONG**  
We'll give you a full-time contract \_\_\_\_\_ happy with your work.
- Suppose I accepted the job, how soon would you want me to start? **WERE**  
If I \_\_\_\_\_ the job, how soon would you want me to start?
- Supposing you don't get the job, what would you do then? **LET'S**  
\_\_\_\_\_ you don't get the job, what would you do then?

**5** Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the verbs in brackets.

- If the shop \_\_\_\_\_ (not have) the right version, I \_\_\_\_\_ (definitely/ get) it online.
- If I \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) left-handed, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not wear) my watch on my right wrist.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ (close) the factory unless a buyer \_\_\_\_\_ (come forward) in the next few days.
- If Cindy \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) at the party now, you \_\_\_\_\_ (be) miserable.
- If I \_\_\_\_\_ (not sit) here now, I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) at home playing the guitar.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) you dinner provided that we \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) the exam!

## WRITING

### A REPORT; LEARN TO MAKE WRITTEN COMPARISONS

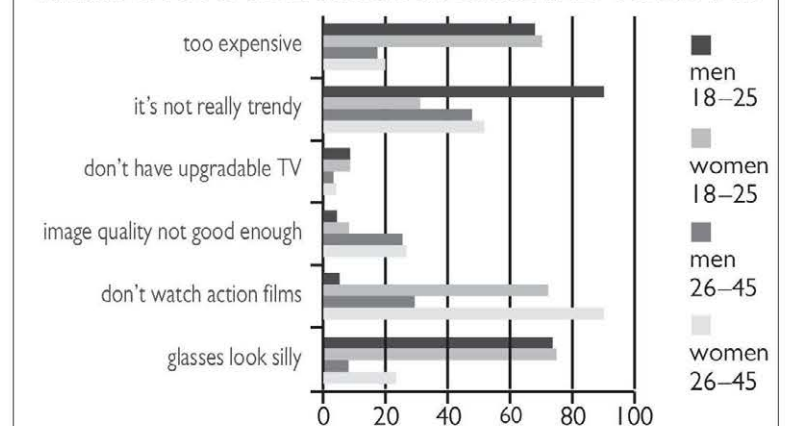
**6 A** Put the words in the correct order to make phrases.

- for / less / is / important / far
- contrast / an / to / show / interesting
- on / place / importance / greater
- is / in / no / there / difference / almost
- equally / both / more / less / affects / groups / or
- differences / significant / are / there / in
- a / shows / slight / only / variation

**B** Look at the chart and complete the sentences with the phrases from Exercise 6A.

- Looking at men and women in the younger age group, the way the glasses look \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ the number of people who don't have an upgradable TV.
- Comparing younger men and women, the importance of price and image quality \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ the number of people who watch action films – the films that benefit the most from the 3D effect.
- Younger men \_\_\_\_\_ how trendy 3D TV is than the other groups.
- The results for the older groups \_\_\_\_\_ those for the younger group.
- The way the glasses look \_\_\_\_\_ people in the older age group than the 18-to-25-year-olds.

**WHAT STOPS YOU FROM UPGRADING TO 3D TV?**



**C** Write five more sentences about the data in the chart.

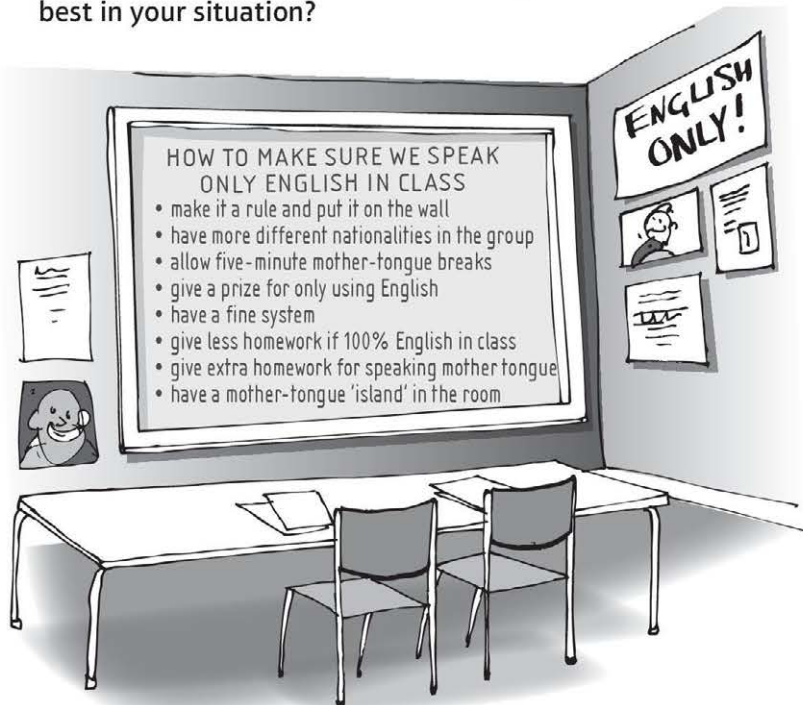




## FUNCTION

## SUGGESTING IDEAS

- 1 A** Read the list of ideas. Which two do you think would be the best in your situation?



**B** Read the conversation. Do the speakers share your ideas?

- A:** What do you think about simply writing the rule on a sign on the wall: 'English only'?
- B:** I think it's too simple. We'd ignore it.
- C:** <sup>1</sup>How much do you feel about a fine system? You have to pay if you speak your language.
- B:** <sup>2</sup>That could be a problem idea. Not everyone has money for fines.
- A:** <sup>3</sup>I suppose we try a mother-tongue 'island'. A place in the room where you can go to speak your mother tongue if you really need to.
- C:** <sup>4</sup>That's not a bad terribly idea.
- B:** <sup>5</sup>It wouldn't be work. Everyone would be on the island!
- A:** <sup>6</sup>Would you consider about having five-minute mother-tongue breaks in the middle of the lesson?
- B:** <sup>7</sup>I think we're running on the wrong track here. It's either punishment or reward, nothing else works.
- C:** <sup>8</sup>How does giving a prize for using only English strike you out? Like no homework? Or chocolate?
- B:** <sup>9</sup>Should we go agree for that?
- A:** <sup>10</sup>It'd be great if we should could get more different nationalities in the group. Then we'd naturally speak English more.
- B:** <sup>11</sup>It wouldn't be my first last choice. Where are we going to find these people?
- C:** <sup>12</sup>I'm torn up between punishment and reward systems. Fines or prizes.
- A:** Could we go for both?
- B:** Yeah, <sup>13</sup>let's go out with that.

**C** Cross out the unnecessary word in each underlined phrase.

- D** **5.3** Listen to the conversation or read the audio script on pages 77–78 to check.

## VOCABULARY

## COLLOCATIONS WITH IDEA

- 2 A** Complete the words by adding vowels.

- People who read that won't understand it, the ideas are much too **b\_z\_rr\_**.
- When the movie started I already knew how it was going to end. The idea for the film was very **pr\_d\_ct\_bl\_**.
- They both refused to speak until the other apologised for **cr\_t\_c\_s\_ng** their ideas.
- Harry's just started at the bank and thinks he'll be running it within a year. He's already **c\_m\_ng\_p\_w\_th** ideas for how to change things.
- The directors **r\_j\_ct\_d** her idea for expanding the business because they thought it was too risky.
- Have you heard? The director wants to fire Sophie for having that **dr\_\_df\_l** idea – it cost the company thousands of pounds.
- So you want to drive 2000 kilometres in two days, all by yourself? I think that's an **\_nr\_\_l\_st\_c** idea.
- That's the best idea I've ever heard! It's **br\_ll\_\_nt**.

**B** **5.4** Listen to the words and circle the correct stress pattern.

- |        |      |        |      |
|--------|------|--------|------|
| 1 Oo   | oO   | 5 Ooo  | oOo  |
| 2 oOoo | ooOo | 6 Oo   | oO   |
| 3 Oooo | ooOo | 7 oOoo | ooOo |
| 4 Oooo | ooOo | 8 Oo   | oO   |

## LEARN TO

## SHOW RESERVATIONS

- 3 A** Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- To be honestly, I thought your first suggestion was better.
- To put bluntly, that's the worst idea I've heard today.
- Actual, I don't think that's a very practical idea.
- Frankedly, it's just not going to work.
- I have to saying, that's probably the only way.

**B** **5.5** Listen and check. Then listen again and repeat, paying attention to the stress and intonation.

## VOCABULARY

## AGE



### 1 A Correct B's sentences by changing one word.

- 1 **A:** I'm going to play on the swings ...  
**B:** Behave your age! They're meant for kids.
- 2 **A:** Mina seems very sensible for a sixteen-year-old.  
**B:** I'm continually surprised by her maternity.
- 3 **A:** I can't believe he's seventy!  
**B:** Yes, he looks very young than his age.
- 4 **A:** What are you doing this weekend?  
**B:** We're visiting an elder aunt of Simon's.
- 5 **A:** I think Hugh is too young to become a manager.  
**B:** Careful – that could be seen as age judgement.
- 6 **A:** In her forties, Madonna is attracting even more crowds.  
**B:** Yes, she's definitely in her time.
- 7 **A:** You could say that social networking sites have 'grown up'.  
**B:** I agree – they've certainly reached of age now.
- 8 **A:** I can't believe what he just said!  
**B:** Yeah, he's so immature. He really needs to grow up.

**B** Are the age-related phrases in B's responses positive (+), negative (-) or neutral (N)?

## GRAMMAR

## MODAL VERBS AND RELATED PHRASES

### 2 Complete the article with the words and phrases in the box. You do not need to use one of the words or phrases.

can could are able being able to managed to couldn't  
 should had to don't have to are supposed to made  
 wasn't allowed let

### WHAT WAS LIFE LIKE BEFORE THE INTERNET?

- ☐ If you wanted to keep in touch with friends, you <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ just visit a social networking site. You <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ phone or talk to friends face to face.
- ☐ To sell something, you paid for an advert in the local paper. These days you <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to reach thousands of potential buyers through sites such as Craigslist or eBay. Before you buy you <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ read the conditions thoroughly. If someone else is bidding for you, don't <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ them bid without giving them a limit.
- ☐ Online encyclopedias didn't exist. As a student, once I only <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ find information for an assignment by spending two days in a library.
- ☐ Music came from shops in the form of CDs. Nowadays it <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ be downloaded online. Obviously a good thing? Well, you <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ pay for it but many people download illegally.
- ☐ Before life online, as a kid I was <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to write long thank-you letters for birthday presents instead of <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ send a quick email. My parents were really strict. I <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to play with any new toys until I'd written to everyone.
- ☐ You used to go to friends' homes to watch their holiday videos. Thankfully, you <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ do this anymore. A quick look on a video-sharing site is enough!

### 3 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use between two and five words including the word given.

- 1 There's no obligation for the company to provide training. **HAVE**  
 The company \_\_\_\_\_ training.
- 2 It's impossible to force kids to eat vegetables. **MAKE**  
 You \_\_\_\_\_ vegetables.
- 3 We weren't able to see the supervisor. **MANAGE**  
 We \_\_\_\_\_ see the supervisor.
- 4 He was allowed to go after he'd been questioned for three hours. **LET**  
 The police \_\_\_\_\_ after he'd been questioned for three hours.
- 5 I'm afraid I can't make the meeting. **ABLE**  
 I'm afraid I \_\_\_\_\_ make the meeting.
- 6 This area is forbidden. Get out immediately. **SUPPOSED**  
 You \_\_\_\_\_ in this area.  
 Get out immediately.



## LISTENING

## 4 A How would you answer questions 1–8?

WHAT'S  
THE BEST  
AGE ...

- 1 to choose a career?
- 2 to get married?
- 3 to have a baby?
- 4 to start a sport?
- 5 to learn a musical instrument?
- 6 to learn a new language?
- 7 to become president or prime minister?
- 8 to retire?

## B 6.1 Listen to four speakers. Which question above does each person answer?

Speaker 1: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Speaker 2: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Speaker 3: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Speaker 4: \_\_\_\_\_

## C Listen again and answer the questions.

Speaker 1

- 1 What age does the speaker think is best?
- 2 What three factors are important?

Speaker 2

- 3 What does the speaker think the minimum and maximum age should be?
- 4 What two factors need to be balanced?

Speaker 3

- 5 Why do you need to understand yourself and your relationship?
- 6 What is the wrong age, according to the speaker?

Speaker 4

- 7 When does the speaker think it's OK for a young person to make a choice?
- 8 What advice does the speaker give to other people?

## D Match the phrases in bold with the meanings a)–e).

- 1 I don't think there's any **hard and fast** rule.
- 2 She's **still going strong** now she's over seventy.
- 3 You have to **strike a balance** between maturity and energy.
- 4 It **has to do with** giving yourself enough time to get to know yourself.
- 5 That **worked for me**.

- a) was successful
- b) choose a moderate way, compromise
- c) fixed, definite
- d) is connected to
- e) continuing to be successful

## VOCABULARY PLUS

## WORD-BUILDING: PREFIXES

## 5 A Put the words in the correct group according to the negative prefix they take.

realistic satisfied behave secure familiar  
 predictable logical patient mortal willing  
 interpret relevant healthy

- 1 un: \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 im: \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 mis: \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 il: \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 ir: \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 dis: \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 in: \_\_\_\_\_

## B Complete the text with the negative form of words in Exercise 5A. You do not need three of the words.

## Dealing with difficult students

Students are motivated to learn by a variety of factors. Some look for a sense of personal achievement while others enjoy being involved as a member of a learning group.

Teachers sometimes make the mistake of having <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ expectations of students. It is better to be patient with their progress rather than being <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ because being <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to let students learn from their own mistakes can be demotivating.

Students often have a lot to deal with, particularly if they are moving from an environment they know to an <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ learning environment. They may feel unsure and <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ because they are not used to the new systems and may become <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ with their new school and way of life. These feelings can take many forms of expression such as sadness or attention-seeking and a tendency to <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

Whatever form of behaviour this takes the teacher can show understanding by responding to students using expressions such as 'I understand why you feel like that, but ...'. The teacher should pay attention to what the student is really saying, even if it sometimes seems to be <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and unconnected the subject.

It is easy to <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the new students' actions and statements so it is important to keep listening and communicating with them and letting them know that you are there to support them and not simply to judge them. Start by telling them this and your relationship will soon change from an <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and harmful one into one that is happy and motivating.

## C Write the negative form of words in Exercise 5A in the correct group according to the stress pattern.

- oooOo \_\_\_\_\_  
 ooOoo \_\_\_\_\_  
 oOoo \_\_\_\_\_  
 oOo \_\_\_\_\_  
 ooO \_\_\_\_\_  
 ooOo \_\_\_\_\_

## D 6.2 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.



## READING

**1 A** Read the article. Which of the following topics are not mentioned?

work transport clothes food relationships shopping  
energy social networking newspapers radio and television

**B** Six sentences have been removed from the article. Complete the article with sentences a)–f).

- a) Work comes to you.
- b) Now the restaurant's bioprinter starts to produce the raw ingredients for the restaurant AIPA to cook and bring to the table.
- c) Some do accounting, some write letters.
- d) You have instant video chat, internet browsing and can do many other things you needed a smartphone for previously.
- e) You control what happens in the whole house from here, so you remotely switch on the lights and the shower and tell the kitchen you'll be ready for breakfast in 20 minutes.
- f) Computers inside your car take away the need for manual driving.

**C** Read the article again. Are the statements true (T), false (F) or is the information not given (NG)?

- 1 You are woken up early because of an important news bulletin.
- 2 Your artificially intelligent personal assistant has checked your health.
- 3 Your clothes are newly made as soon as you have decided what to wear.
- 4 Cars are designed to be energy efficient.
- 5 The ingredients for your food are produced at the restaurant by a bioprinter.
- 6 Flying machines make deliveries to your home.
- 7 Smart glasses save everything you do during the day so that you can play it back later.
- 8 Your own home contributes fifteen per cent of the electricity you use.

## 2030 VISION

**Smartphones are museum pieces and cable TV – well what was that? The world will be very different in the future but what will everyday life be like in 2030?**

**06.45**

You're gently woken up in your sleep pod – you don't sleep in a bed, they've developed dramatically into sleep pods. <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Meanwhile your artificially intelligent personal assistant (AIPA) has started work monitoring your body functions and making sure you're fit and well for the day ahead.

**07.50**

You're ready for work but you don't need to go anywhere. <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ You enter your virtual office and greet co-workers from around the world in your virtual work environment. You and your colleague in Singapore look at the live data feeds and make real-time decisions about your work. Then a workmate nearby asks for a face-to-face meeting over lunch. You decide what to wear and an army of nanobots make the clothes for you.

**12.30**

Your journey is still by car – but you don't drive it. It drives. <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ They talk to the smart road which is regulating the flow of traffic so that cars are travelling at maximum speed and efficiency. You know there won't be a delay because of a car accident – there hasn't been a car crash for ten years now.

**12.45**

You arrive for your meal. Your car has already suggested a menu – beef goulash. <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ During the meal your workmate mentions her new smart glasses and this reminds you that a drone will deliver yours later today.

**15.30**

Work's finished. You have a lot more leisure time now because AIPAs can do a lot of the work for us and a lot quicker. <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Not all AIPA's have human form, some are simply computer programmes with human-like intelligence and understanding. Right on time the drone arrives with your smart glasses.

**19.00**

In the evening you see what your new smart glasses can do. Smart glasses have replaced the smartphone because they are a lot easier to use and have a lot more functions. <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Even better, they record every minute of your day for you so that you can watch your day again – speeded up this time.

**22.00**

As you sleep the smart electricity grid and your smart electrical appliances are saving electricity and sending it to where it is needed most. In fact, it has been doing this 24/7 but at night it becomes very noticeable as your fridge powers down and the street lights dim. We can finally see the stars from our cities again.





## GRAMMAR

## FUTURE PERFECT AND CONTINUOUS

## 2 Underline the correct alternative.

- 1 Nine o'clock's too late to arrive. The concert *will start/will be starting/will have started* by then.
- 2 You can use my desk. I *won't use/won't be using/won't have used* it tomorrow as I'm away.
- 3 Dr Sawali will be happy to lead a discussion during the conference as she'll *attend/'ll be attending/'ll have attended* it anyway.
- 4 Will you still *need/be needing/have needed* me when I'm sixty-four?
- 5 Your two-day visit *will involve/will be involving/will have involved* a factory tour and several meetings.
- 6 By this time tomorrow the championship draw *will happen/will be happening/will have happened* and we'll know who we're playing.

## 3 A Complete the predictions made in the 1950s about life in 2020. Use the future perfect or future continuous.

- 1 The world / experience / mini ice-age / at that time.  
*The world will be experiencing a mini ice-age at that time.*
- 2 The average weight / adult male / go down / to seventy kilos.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Smoking / ban / completely / in all public areas.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Everyone / drive / flying cars.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Men and women / wear / same clothes.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Poverty and famine / halve.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**B** Which predictions above have already come true (✓), which may well come true (?) and which are unlikely to come true (X)?

## VOCABULARY

## OPTIMISM/PESSIMISM

## 4 Write letters to complete the words.

- 1 feel good about a future event  
= look \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 have good and bad experiences  
= have u \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 make no progress = \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 have emotions which are both positive and negative  
= have m \_\_\_\_\_ f \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 see the positive side of things  
= \_\_\_\_\_ side
- 6 positive = up \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 fear = dr \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 create a feeling of hopelessness  
= fill with de \_\_\_\_\_

## WRITING

## AN INFORMAL EMAIL; LEARN TO FOCUS ON INFORMAL STYLE

## 5 A Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

for all about to know rather get 'd let be

- 1 April is a great time \_\_\_\_\_ visiting Budapest – the spring festival is on.
- 2 Now, \_\_\_\_\_ your idea of travelling to New York. I \_\_\_\_\_ love to come along.
- 3 Sheila was happy to \_\_\_\_\_ an email from her friend in Indonesia.
- 4 It'd \_\_\_\_\_ great if we could get free tickets to the concert. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ you know when it starts.
- 5 I'm really excited about planning our holiday together, I can't wait \_\_\_\_\_ meet again and plan it in more detail. See you again soon. \_\_\_\_\_ the best!
- 6 Do you \_\_\_\_\_ which is the closest airport to Brighton? I'd \_\_\_\_\_ land as near to the city as possible.

## B Complete the emails words and phrases in italics from Exercise 5A.

Hi Levent!

I was really <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ your text. I can't believe you're finally coming to Liverpool! I knew the information <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the music festival, in fact I was planning to go myself. If you're going too, why don't we go together? It'd <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to hang out for a while. In fact, you could come earlier and stay with us for a few days. You always said you'd like to spend some time in the city and this would be <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it. What do you know about Liverpool – <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ what you'd like to see? <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_,

Tim

Hello Tim,

What a surprise that you're going too!

<sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to see you and your family but it's difficult to visit you before the festival – <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ come after, if that's OK. Do you have any details about the festival? Can you send them to me? I'll <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ what my plans are next week. <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ hear more about the festival. All the best, Levent

## VOCABULARY

### COLLOCATIONS

#### 1 A Complete the questions with the correct collocations.

- How long have you had your current cr \_\_\_\_\_ ca \_\_\_\_\_?
- Do you mind st \_\_\_\_\_ home al \_\_\_\_\_?
- Have you ever ri \_\_\_\_\_ a sc \_\_\_\_\_? If not, would you like to?
- Do you think it's OK for men to we \_\_\_\_\_ make-up?
- How la \_\_\_\_\_ do you think parents should let children st \_\_\_\_\_ up?
- Have you ever ru \_\_\_\_\_ your own bu \_\_\_\_\_? If not, would you enjoy it?
- How many smartphones have you ow \_\_\_\_\_?
- How many so \_\_\_\_\_ ne \_\_\_\_\_ websites have you used, if any?
- Have you ever done a pa \_\_\_\_\_ -ti \_\_\_\_\_ job?
- Would you feel safe tr \_\_\_\_\_ so \_\_\_\_\_ around another country?
- When you were younger did you ever ba \_\_\_\_\_ for a toddler?
- Should children be allowed to get their ears pi \_\_\_\_\_?

**B** Answer each question using no more than three words.

## FUNCTION

### PERSUADING

#### 2 A Correct the mistakes in A's sentences.

- A:** Look at this picture. Isn't that it time they banned 'size zero' models?

**B:** Well, clothes do look quite good on them.

**A:** But it sends a terrible message to young girls. Shouldn't they be knowing it isn't normal to be so skinny?

**B:** I've never really thought about it much.

**A:** Well, you should. Clearly so, these images add to the pressure on young girls.

**B:** Yeah, you're probably right.
- A:** Aren't you thinking that they should use technology in football games?

**B:** What, you mean instead of referees?

**A:** Yeah, to make decisions. No one can't see it would be fairer.

**B:** But you need referees for all sorts of reasons.

**A:** Yeah, but sure it's more important that decisions are correct.

**B:** Hmm. I suppose you have a point.



**B** ▶ 6.3 Listen and mark the main stresses in A's sentences.

**C** ▶ 6.4 Listen and repeat A's sentences. Pay attention to stress and intonation.

## LEARN TO

### CLARIFY IDEAS



#### 3 A Put the phrases in bold in the correct order.

- A:** Do you like me in this dress?

**B:** I prefer the white one.

**A:** **you / is / so / saying / what / 're** this one, which cost a fortune, looks terrible.

**B:** No, I mean the white one makes you look slimmer.

**A:** **other / so, / words / in,** I look fat!

**B:** No, no, you're twisting my words. I just meant that you look **even** slimmer in the white one.
  - A:** Don't you think we should pay a decorator to do it?

**B:** **you / so / think / basically** I can't do it.

**A:** I didn't mean that. It's just that it might be quicker and save us money.

**B:** **what / you / so / mean / is** I might mess it up.

**A:** No, but you're a perfectionist and you know how long it takes you to do things.

**B:** So, you'd rather spend money and end up with a worse job!

**A:** Not exactly ...
- B** ▶ 6.5 Listen and check.



## GRAMMAR ARTICLES

1 Add a, an or the in ten places in the text.



If you want to win at sports, choose red shirt. Research by two scientists from University of Durham shows that team's chance of winning is influenced by colour of their shirts. As part of their investigation, scientists examined football results since end of Second World War and found clear connection between wearing red and winning. Teams who wore orange or yellow shirt had worst records.

## GRAMMAR REAL AND HYPOTHETICAL CONDITIONALS

2 Underline the correct alternatives.



## PRICE WARS – who's the victim?

If you <sup>1</sup>own/owned a shop and you <sup>2</sup>wanted/would want to sell a product, you might put it on sale, but if you <sup>3</sup>would/were to lower the price, you'd make less profit. However, if you keep the price the same but 'would call/call it a 'sale price', customers <sup>5</sup>will/would feel they're getting a bargain. Some other tricks are:

£ **Ninety-nining** – If the price <sup>6</sup>is/were £15.99, it seems like 15-something. If the same product were priced at £16.00, it <sup>7</sup>doesn't/wouldn't sell as well.

£ **Buy one, get one free** – If you <sup>8</sup>buy/bought two items, the less expensive one is 'free'. In fact, <sup>9</sup>provided/supposing the shop is not losing money, you <sup>10</sup>can/could be sure that the profit is included in the price of the more expensive item. <sup>11</sup>Unless/Provided you really need two items, you end up buying more than you planned.

£ **Baiting** – This is when an already cheap product is offered even cheaper. <sup>12</sup>Unless/If you're not very disciplined, once you get into the shop you'll buy other things.

## VOCABULARY PLUS COMPOUND NOUNS

3 A Join a word from box A with one from box B to complete sentences 1–7.

A

out draw break  
down trade out  
break

B

through down off  
look back side  
come

- 1 Its discovery made cooking possible and was a \_\_\_\_\_ in human evolution.
- 2 As more and more of us get our news online, the \_\_\_\_\_ for their survival is poor.
- 3 It can be hard to read, but the main \_\_\_\_\_ is that it's yet another gadget to carry around.
- 4 This is the best solution when there is a complete \_\_\_\_\_ in a marriage.
- 5 People stayed up to hear the \_\_\_\_\_ and to find out who would be the next president.
- 6 There are lots of positives, the only \_\_\_\_\_ is that you have to take it for a walk, even in the rain.
- 7 When people are choosing one, there's always a \_\_\_\_\_ between speed and safety.

B What is being talked about in sentences 1–7 above?

## VOCABULARY ADVERTISING COLLOCATIONS

4 Complete the sentences with the correct word or phrase.

- 1 break into/promote
  - a) There's a meeting in June to \_\_\_\_\_ trade between Scotland and Thailand.
  - b) It's impossible to \_\_\_\_\_ the American market.
- 2 launch/advertise
  - a) I hate it when they \_\_\_\_\_ something straight after the opening titles of a programme.
  - b) The best product \_\_\_\_\_ uses a variety of media, like posters, TV and videos.
- 3 raised/reduced
  - a) Because the products were faulty, it badly \_\_\_\_\_ our sales.
  - b) When the film star wore our clothes, it really \_\_\_\_\_ public awareness of our products.
- 4 enter/set
  - a) Before you can \_\_\_\_\_ a price for your product, you have to know how much it costs to produce it.
  - b) The power company GreenEnergi has taken over a competitor to \_\_\_\_\_ the market with lower prices.

- 5 gap / increase  
 a) Please don't \_\_\_\_\_ the price of rail travel – it's too expensive already.  
 b) They thought they had seen a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ in the market but in fact there were lots of products online already.
- 6 dominated / endorse  
 a) Having a celebrity \_\_\_\_\_ a product is worth a month's advertising.  
 b) The collapse of the French bank \_\_\_\_\_ the news.

### FUNCTION SUGGESTING IDEAS

#### 5 Underline the correct alternatives.

- A: Can we brainstorm ideas for Jack's leaving present?  
 B: Could we go <sup>1</sup>for/towards a gadget of some kind?  
 C: What <sup>2</sup>about/of something to do with cars?  
 D: I was thinking of something similar. For instance, it <sup>3</sup>will/would be great to buy him a ticket to a Formula One race.  
 A: Would you <sup>4</sup>consider/strike something completely different? Suppose we <sup>5</sup>get/should get him a place on a course?  
 B: What kind of course?  
 A: Well, how do flying lessons <sup>6</sup>please/strike you?  
 B: I think we're on the wrong <sup>7</sup>line/track here. How do you <sup>8</sup>feel/think about a book on cars?  
 C: It doesn't <sup>9</sup>strike/grab me. It's not original enough.  
 D: I agree. I'm <sup>10</sup>torn/tearing between the Formula One ticket and the flying lessons.  
 A: Shall we vote? OK, the Formula One ticket wins. So let's <sup>11</sup>go/do with that.

### VOCABULARY OPTIMISM/PESSIMISM

#### 6 Complete the underlined phrases.

- A: So, how are you getting on with the course?  
 B: <sup>1</sup>I / mix / feeling / it. I'm finding the module on statistics very difficult. It feels like I'm <sup>2</sup>nowhere / going, but I'm enjoying the other modules.  
 A: That's not surprising. Everyone <sup>3</sup>have / their / up / down when they start university.  
 B: Yeah, but <sup>4</sup>I / dread the exams.  
 A: Nobody <sup>5</sup>look / forward / take / exams but I'm sure you'll do fine. <sup>6</sup>Look / bright / side. This time next month, they'll all be over.

- 1 I have mixed feelings about it  
 2 \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 \_\_\_\_\_  
 5 \_\_\_\_\_  
 6 \_\_\_\_\_

### GRAMMAR MODAL VERBS AND RELATED PHRASES

#### 7 Complete the conversations with a modal verb or phrase.

- A: Did you do the whole walk?  
 B: We <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ climb to the top, but we <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ stay long because of the weather.  
 A: Were you <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ see much of the view?  
 A: You really <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ fly when you've got such bad flu.  
 B: But if I don't get on that plane I <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to go to the wedding.  
 A: But when you try to check in, they might not <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ fly. The rules are quite strict.  
 A: What time do your parents say you <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ go to bed?  
 B: I'm <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ be in bed by ten but I often stay up till eleven. What about you?  
 A: I'm <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ stay up till ten at the weekend but my parents <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ me go to bed at nine during the week.

### FUNCTION PERSUADING

#### 8 Complete the conversation with the words in the box. You do not need to use three words.

shouldn't surely doesn't wouldn't haven't  
 aren't clearly don't isn't

- A: Tom, <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ you think we should start packing?  
 B: <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ it won't take all night to pack. We don't leave till noon.  
 A: <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ we at least begin? Last time it took ages – <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ we didn't allow enough time then.  
 B: Only because I couldn't find my glasses!  
 A: Exactly. So <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ it better to do it now to give ourselves plenty of time?  
 B: You could start. I'll just throw in a few things later.  
 A: But <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ it be quicker if we did it together?



## GRAMMAR FUTURE PERFECT AND CONTINUOUS

- 9 Complete the articles with the future perfect or continuous form of the verbs in the boxes. If neither is possible, use the future simple.

not save   discuss   pay   face   double

## By 2025

By 2025 in many countries the number of people over sixty-five

1 \_\_\_\_\_ and

far fewer people of working age

2 \_\_\_\_\_

taxes to support them. It is

almost certainly the case that many older people

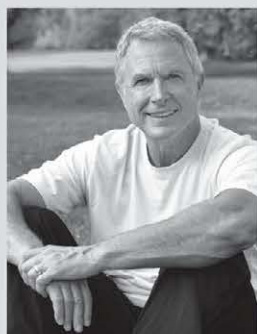
3 \_\_\_\_\_ enough for their old age

and 4 \_\_\_\_\_ an uncertain future

or one of poverty. Experts from many different

countries 5 \_\_\_\_\_ the issue in

Stockholm over the course of the next week.



work   have   replace   not drive   live

## By 2050

Sixty percent of humanity

6 \_\_\_\_\_

in cities. They 7 \_\_\_\_\_ petrol

or diesel cars. All cars 8 \_\_\_\_\_

hybrid engines so that they run on electricity as well

as a more traditional fuel. Robots

9 \_\_\_\_\_ humans in all

boring, mundane jobs and as a result, people

10 \_\_\_\_\_ in more stimulating

jobs but with fewer hours.



## VOCABULARY PLUS WORD BUILDING: PREFIXES

- 10 A Find ten words with negative prefixes in the word square.

H	C	K	P	D	O	K	H	K	H	Y	F	N	U	S
X	J	A	Z	I	K	T	T	I	L	C	J	T	J	R
L	T	I	U	S	Y	U	N	V	U	A	U	V	V	V
G	H	N	N	S	Q	N	Q	X	N	T	E	G	I	Y
B	P	S	W	A	M	F	F	C	H	I	H	C	M	S
Z	I	E	I	T	E	A	A	Z	E	I	H	W	P	U
Y	R	C	L	I	D	M	L	X	A	L	G	M	A	P
I	R	U	L	S	L	I	Y	G	L	Q	Q	J	T	T
V	E	R	I	F	F	L	K	M	T	I	H	E	I	L
Y	L	E	N	I	A	I	P	O	H	N	V	E	E	S
L	E	H	G	E	Y	A	F	D	Y	V	D	V	N	U
B	V	X	I	D	S	R	I	Q	Z	X	R	C	T	B
E	A	U	U	N	R	E	A	L	I	S	T	I	C	K
M	N	M	I	S	B	E	H	A	V	E	N	T	Y	R
L	T	Y	M	I	S	I	N	T	E	R	P	R	E	T

- B Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 10A.

- You eat three burgers and a pizza everyday? That's the most \_\_\_\_\_ diet I've ever heard of.
- I'm sorry but your point about aliens living on the moon is completely \_\_\_\_\_ to our discussion about science.
- We asked for more money for the charity, but the government was \_\_\_\_\_ to help.
- Many of our customers are very \_\_\_\_\_ with the new product.
- Please don't \_\_\_\_\_ what Ahmet is trying to say.
- Judy is really \_\_\_\_\_ – you can tell by the way she bites her nails.
- Wait a minute for me to find the right TV channel – you're so \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's just \_\_\_\_\_ to think that we can score three goals in five minutes.
- Cem's such a naughty boy – I can't believe how often I saw him \_\_\_\_\_.
- Can you help me with the new software? I'm \_\_\_\_\_ with this programme.

## CHECK

Circle the correct option to complete the sentences.

- 1 I don't think he feels very safe, he seems very \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) unrealistic b) irrelevant c) insecure
- 2 Before the invention of \_\_\_\_\_ people paid for everything in cash.  
a) the credit card b) a credit card  
c) the credit cards
- 3 Great news! A Formula One driver has just \_\_\_\_\_ the company's new product.  
a) increased b) reduced c) endorsed
- 4 Caroline didn't want to go to university and went to work instead. Now she is \_\_\_\_\_ her first business.  
a) making b) taking c) running
- 5 There will be a bonus paid to all managers \_\_\_\_\_ they meet their targets.  
a) unless b) provided c) as long
- 6 Is it \_\_\_\_\_ to eat so much?  
a) unhealthy b) insecure c) unfamiliar
- 7 I think we're \_\_\_\_\_ nowhere here.  
a) coming b) going c) taking
- 8 The \_\_\_\_\_ for next year's harvests is very poor and a widespread famine is predicted.  
a) outlook b) outcome c) downside
- 9 Children under thirteen \_\_\_\_\_ join social networking sites, but they often do.  
a) aren't supposed to b) don't have to  
c) aren't allowed
- 10 Are you allowed to \_\_\_\_\_ make-up at school?  
a) put b) get c) wear
- 11 Don't phone me until the afternoon. \_\_\_\_\_ to our Washington office by then.  
a) I'll be speaking b) I'll speak c) I'll have spoken
- 12 She is very keen and imaginative and has \_\_\_\_\_ ideas for the future of the club.  
a) bizarre b) predictable c) brilliant
- 13 \_\_\_\_\_ your headphones today? I've broken mine.  
a) Will you be using b) Will you use  
c) Will you have used
- 14 A third runway has been approved at the airport. What \_\_\_\_\_ for local residents over the next few years?  
a) will that be meaning b) will that mean  
c) will that have meant
- 15 \_\_\_\_\_ buy the property, we would need to charge a high rent.  
a) If we will b) Unless we c) If we were to
- 16 \_\_\_\_\_ unfair that wealthy people pay a smaller proportion of taxes than those with less money?  
a) Don't you think b) Isn't c) Doesn't it seem
- 17 So \_\_\_\_\_ that no one knows the answer, they're just guessing?  
a) what you're saying is b) what you're getting is  
c) basically you
- 18 Contact lenses \_\_\_\_\_ eyecare in the mid-twentieth century.  
a) had a devastating effect b) revolutionised  
c) adjusted
- 19 The product has been \_\_\_\_\_ by leading medical experts.  
a) endorsed b) raised c) dominated
- 20 The whole feel of the website is very \_\_\_\_\_ and positive.  
a) upbeat b) despairing c) dreadful
- 21 The book is about a \_\_\_\_\_ sect or religion which existed in the fourteenth century.  
a) predictable b) bizarre c) unrealistic
- 22 At school they \_\_\_\_\_ three hours' homework a night.  
a) let us do b) made us do c) allowed us to do
- 23 There was a \_\_\_\_\_ in the talks at the very last minute and an agreement has been reached.  
a) breakdown b) breakthrough c) trade-off
- 24 He won't play in the World Cup \_\_\_\_\_ completely fit.  
a) unless he's b) if he's c) until he'll be
- 25 He's amazing. He looks really \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) his prime b) young for his age c) immature
- 26 Would you consider \_\_\_\_\_ a consultant?  
a) hiring b) hire c) to hire
- 27 If I get high enough grades, I'll start \_\_\_\_\_ next September.  
a) the university b) university c) a university
- 28 The rise of drug abuse fills me with \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) upbeat b) despair c) mixed feeling
- 29 Last Tuesday for the first time, scientists \_\_\_\_\_ communicate with a patient in a deep coma.  
a) could b) were able c) managed to
- 30 \_\_\_\_\_ is like jam – you can't spread even a little without getting some on yourself!  
a) The happiness b) A happiness c) Happiness

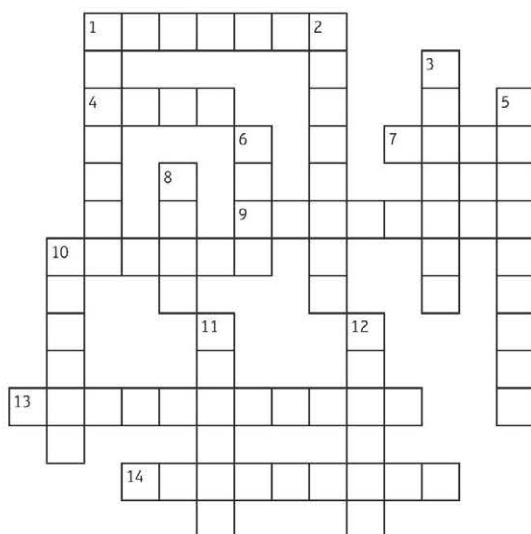
RESULT /30



## VOCABULARY

## TELEVISION

1 Complete the crossword with types of TV programme.



## Across

- 1 A \_\_\_\_\_ affairs programme covers up-to-date social and political stories.
- 4 A \_\_\_\_\_ opera has romance and drama and is on regularly.
- 7 Number 8 down is one kind of \_\_\_\_\_ show.
- 9 This programme features animals.
- 10 A set of programmes, for example, a new \_\_\_\_\_ of *Strictly Come Dancing*.
- 13 A programme about something real.
- 14 This programme mixes reality and fiction.

## Down

- 1 Actors wear clothes from the past in a \_\_\_\_\_ drama.
- 2 It's full of suspense.
- 3 This type of show often puts ordinary people in extraordinary situations.
- 5 A private eye solves a murder every week in a \_\_\_\_\_ series.
- 6 Find out what happened today on the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Competitors answer questions on a \_\_\_\_\_ show.
- 10 This has the same characters each week in funny situations.
- 11 Short funny pieces are acted out on a \_\_\_\_\_ show.
- 12 It's a story or drama broadcast in different parts.

## GRAMMAR

## QUANTIFIERS

2 Cross out the incorrect alternative in each sentence.

- 1 He's got *quite a few*/*many*/*little* English-speaking friends.
- 2 *Several*/*Every*/*Each* room has a whiteboard.
- 3 We have *a little*/*a small amount of*/*little* money left, so we can afford a coffee.
- 4 *Much*/*A small number of*/*A great deal of* time was spent explaining the error.
- 5 I'll buy *either of*/*all of*/*both of* them, I like them so much.
- 6 *A few*/*A little*/*Several* books are missing from the library.
- 7 I've got *no*/*any*/*some* idea what to do if the car breaks down.
- 8 I can't see *any*/*many*/*no* reasons for sleeping here tonight.

3 Complete the report with the quantifiers in the box.

several   another   a large number  
a few   no   quite a few   every  
plenty of   each   a good deal of

## WHAT'S YOUR MEDIUM?

We asked you how you prefer to get information: via the internet, TV, radio, or newspapers and magazines?

Here are the results.

## Internet: 67%

Unsurprisingly, <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ people said that the internet is their primary source of information, although <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

respondents said they never used it. Two main advantages of the internet were mentioned by <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ people, indeed by most of them. One was easy access. <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ was up-to-date content. Both of these features were given as problems with newspapers and magazines.



## TV: 21%

Surprisingly, <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of respondents, more than 94%, say they spend more time watching TV than they used to although about a quarter of TV viewing is done through the internet. Both normal and internet-based TV remain important sources of information and <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of them has maintained healthy audience figures.

## Radio: 7%

Just as internet TV has been a boost to that medium, the internet has helped radio maintain its status as a preferred source of information for at least <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ respondents who spend <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ time listening to their radios.




## Newspapers and magazines: 5%

Most respondents commented that although newspapers and magazines were more reliable than <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ one of the electronic sources, TV, radio and the internet were all more convenient. Four people said that they use <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ other source apart from newspapers and magazines.



## LISTENING

**4 A**  **7.1** Listen to four people talk about their favourite childhood TV programme and complete the table.

Speaker	Programme name	Programme type
1		
2		
3		
4		



**B** Listen again. Which speaker (1–4) thinks:

- Kids learnt how to make things.
- It was something kids understood better than their parents.
- Every episode took kids on a journey.
- If you made an effort you could win a prize.
- Kids learnt a lot that helped them with growing up.
- Kids enjoyed the unconventional nature of it.
- It involved a strong element of fantasy.
- It was very realistic and right for the age group.

**C** Match the words in bold with meanings a)–f).

- He's then transported to a world that **corresponds with** the outfit that he's wearing.
- It's hard to underestimate its cultural **impact**.
- It kind of **bridges the gap between** the two.
- It deals with issues ... in an **unpatronising, non-condescending** way.
- One sketch would **morph** into another.
- We'd spend our entire lunch break ... remembering all the **catchphrases**.

- expressions which are linked to a performer or programme and are very recognisable
- appropriately intelligent
- matches
- connects
- influence or effect
- change


## VOCABULARY PLUS

### MULTI-WORD VERBS

**5 A** Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

across out (x 2) up back

- If I say something offensive, I'm often too stubborn to take it \_\_\_\_\_.
- If a homeless person knocked on my door in the middle of winter, I would put them \_\_\_\_\_ for the night.
- Hard work brings \_\_\_\_\_ the best in me.
- I come \_\_\_\_\_ as being more sociable than I really am.
- If it turned \_\_\_\_\_ that my partner had lied to me, I would be disappointed in him.

**B**  **7.2** Listen to the sentences in Exercise 5A and underline the stressed part of the multi-word verb. Then listen and repeat.

**C** Complete the sentences with a multi-word verb from Exercise 5A but with a different or slightly different meaning.

- I always buy a new version of a product as soon as it is \_\_\_\_\_.
- I can \_\_\_\_\_ with a noisy hotel room more easily than a dirty one.
- Smells rather than images \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ to my childhood.
- If I \_\_\_\_\_ a large amount of money in the street, I would hand it into the police.
- When a lot of people \_\_\_\_\_ for a political demonstration, I'm usually not one of them.

**D** Tick the sentences in Exercises 5A and C that are true for you.



## READING

**1 A** Read the article about unauthorised use of photos. Which of the following are mentioned as using photographs without permission?

- a professional photographer
- an electronics shop
- a social networking website
- a telephone company
- a newspaper
- a city transport company
- a travel agency



## SAY 'CHEESE' NOW ... SUE LATER

The McGraw family of Dublin expected their visit to Poland to be full of adventure and surprises. But they never expected to find themselves four metres high, beaming at the world from the wall of an underground station.

'We turned a corner onto the platform, and there we were in living colour,' said Paul McGraw. 'It was a family photo that I'd posted on our family blog last year but in the middle of an advertisement for an electronics appliance chain. No one ever asked us for permission,' added McGraw. 'Someone obviously downloaded it off our blog.'

<sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

The unauthorised use of photographs downloaded from internet photo albums is not uncommon, and it would be impossible to count how many local advertising agencies have avoided costly photography and copyright fees by simply downloading material they find on the internet.

'It's simply too tempting for them,' said advertising lawyer Lee Szymanski. 'In most cases, where the

**B** Five sentences have been removed from the article. Complete the article using sentences a)–f). There is one sentence you do not need to use.

- a) 'The value of my work drops every time someone uses it without paying,' he said. 'I can't describe the anger I feel.'
- b) Who in the UK would ever find out that their image appears in a billboard advert somewhere in New Zealand?
- c) 'We think that amateur photographers should be happy for their work to gain so much exposure,' said a company representative.
- d) Or furniture. Or electronic appliances. Or cars ...
- e) 'In fact it didn't really bother us,' he added. 'But I can imagine someone else being very upset.'
- f) There are cases where the courts have not looked favourably upon the photographer's claim.

advertisement is going to appear in a small geographical area, the chances of getting caught are almost zero.

<sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ And if they do get caught, the legal process is too complicated, expensive, and frankly unclear for it to be worth pursuing.'

As rarely as the culprits are caught, there are countless known cases of such 'borrowing'. In one case, a major mobile phone provider used photographs taken from an internet photo album site in one of its campaigns, and justified it by saying that it was 'promoting creative freedom'. <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

Professional photographers have also been affected, and the law has not been clear in deciding if unauthorised use is legal or not. A California newspaper used a copyrighted photo taken by a professional photographer without seeking his permission, and when he sued them, the jury decided it was a case of 'fair use' – leaving the photographer with nothing but legal fees and frustration. On the other hand, a New York judge awarded a Quebec-based photographer over \$60,000 in damages when he sued an online travel agency for their use of four photos he had shot in Ghana. Meanwhile, the photos had been duplicated and used on at least 200 other websites, according to the photographer. <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

'Professional photographers are in a better position to seek damages because they copyright their work,' said Szymanski. 'But for most people who simply upload snapshots to share with friends, there's very little they can do.'

So the next time you upload a photo of yourself with a big grin, don't be surprised if you find yourself advertising toothpaste somewhere in the world. <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_



## GRAMMAR

## REPORTED SPEECH

2 Underline the correct alternatives.

### THE WORST INTERVIEW I EVER HAD

– BY ACTOR RUDY SEARS

It was with a young journalist and he started out by asking me normal questions. He asked how long it <sup>1</sup>*took/had taken* me to become successful as an actor and I told him that I <sup>2</sup>*didn't remember/hadn't remembered* a particular point where I could say I was successful. He asked who <sup>3</sup>*did have/had had* the greatest influence on my acting style and I said that my mother *'has/had* – she was an amateur actress. Then he started on the personal questions: he asked if my marriage <sup>5</sup>*was breaking down/broke down* and if it was true that my wife <sup>6</sup>*wanted/wants* a divorce. I said I <sup>7</sup>*won't/wouldn't* discuss that and that I <sup>8</sup>*must/had to* go. In the end he wrote a very negative article about me, but it actually helped my career.

3 Change the sentences to reported speech.

- 1 A: Why did you come here today?  
He wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 B: I've been trying to see you since yesterday.  
I said that \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 A: Please close the door and have a seat.  
He asked \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 B: How can I help you?  
He enquired \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 A: I have information that Mario the Snitch will be killed tomorrow.  
I told \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 B: What makes you think this might happen?  
He wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 A: Don't waste time asking me questions.  
I told him \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 B: Shall I let the cops know?  
He asked \_\_\_\_\_  
and I told him it was up to him.



## VOCABULARY

## REPORTING VERBS

4 A Complete the interviewer's questions (1–6) and the answers a)–f) with the correct forms of the verbs.

Have you ever ...

- 1 been persuaded \_\_\_\_\_ (take part) in a film you didn't want to?
  - 2 threatened \_\_\_\_\_ (walk out) of a film?
  - 3 suggested \_\_\_\_\_ (make) changes to a film?
  - 4 been accused \_\_\_\_\_ (lie)?
  - 5 apologised \_\_\_\_\_ (do) something when you didn't mean it?
  - 6 admitted \_\_\_\_\_ (do) something that you didn't do?
- a) No, but sometimes I've refused \_\_\_\_\_ (say) 'sorry'.  
b) Not usually, but once I told them \_\_\_\_\_ (change) my script in a key scene.  
c) No, but I've done the opposite: denied \_\_\_\_\_ (do) something that I *did* do.  
d) No, once I've agreed \_\_\_\_\_ (take on) a job, I would never leave halfway through.  
e) No, not even when they've offered \_\_\_\_\_ (pay) me a fortune.  
f) No, and in fact I always advise people \_\_\_\_\_ (be) honest.

B Match questions 1–6 with answers a)–f).

## WRITING

### A DISCURSIVE ESSAY; LEARN TO USE LINKERS OF CONTRAST

5 A Look at the sentences from an essay on the topic below. Are they for (✓) or against (X) the topic?

Topic: Most information on the internet is unreliable.

- 1 Most internet writers are amateurs, but many give objective information.
- 2 The internet is a convenient source of information, but its accessibility can also mean that this information is not trustworthy.
- 3 Of course there's some inaccurate content, but it's the reader's responsibility to identify the reliable information.
- 4 Wiki contributors try to give accurate information but too many don't use reliable sources.
- 5 Many amateur news websites look serious, but that doesn't make them accurate.
- 6 These weaknesses exist, but there are reasons to trust much internet content as well.

B Rewrite each sentence in Exercise 5A with the linker given. Pay attention to punctuation.

- 1 (although) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 (while) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 (however) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 (despite) \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 (although) \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 (while) \_\_\_\_\_



## VOCABULARY

### THE PRESS

#### 1 A Add vowels to make words.

- |                             |                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 s _ ppl _ m _ nt          | 5 b _ _ s _ d                 |
| 2 c _ rc _ l _ t _ _ n      | 6 _ d _ t _ r _ _ l _ p _ g _ |
| 3 s _ ns _ t _ _ n _ l _ sm | 7 f _ _ t _ r _ _             |
| 4 _ d _ t _ _ n             | 8 t _ bl _ _ d                |

#### B Complete the letter with the words in Exercise 1A.

To the Editor,

I am writing to complain about recent changes to your newspaper in the new <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

I believe I am typical of the paper's readers in that I am an ordinary working person and I strongly object to the <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of some of your recent headlines and stories, which does not suit a serious newspaper like yours. This style of reporting and the new colour <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ are more typical of <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ newspapers. Also, the recent <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on the public transport system was full of the reporter's own opinion and was very <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I think you should save your opinions for the <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ as that's what it is for.

I am sure the reason for these changes was to increase <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, but it has made me decide to cancel my subscription.

## FUNCTION

### ADDING EMPHASIS

#### 2 Rewrite the sentences using one of the emphasising structures: pronoun/noun + *be* + *the one who* or *the* + adjective + *thing is*.

- He's always watching the news channel, not me.  
He's the one who's always watching the news channel, not me.
- You were asking about the celebrity news.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The story is incredible because all the people escaped safely.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The fact that people want to buy this paper is remarkable.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- They want to have a big magazine launch party, not us.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The number of adverts is ridiculous.  
\_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 A Correct the mistakes in the underlined parts of the conversation.

- A: <sup>1</sup>This is total outrageous. Your questions are very biased against the government. I've never heard such biased statements from a journalist before.  
<sup>2</sup>Absolute incredibly.
- B: Well, minister, <sup>3</sup>you're the one who always telling the people that we're getting richer when the cost of living is increasing and our wages are staying the same. <sup>4</sup>What on earth do you justify that?
- A: Look, <sup>5</sup>there isn't a way I'd say that if the data didn't agree! Having said that, <sup>6</sup>I be think we can do better to help ordinary people and so we're going to cut petrol tax.
- B: <sup>7</sup>That are a good idea, minister, but why are you introducing it now? Is it because the election is in two months?
- A: <sup>8</sup>That is so wrongly! Are you suggesting that we're making up policies to gain votes?
- B: To be honest minister, <sup>9</sup>the amazed thing is that you're denying making policies to win votes.

#### B 7.3 Listen and circle the stressed words in the underlined parts of the conversation.

#### C 7.4 Listen and repeat the phrases.

## LEARN TO

### MAKE GUESSES



#### 4 A Put the words in the correct order.

- it's / reckon / I / fish / Siamese / a  
I reckon it's a Siamese fish
- it's / photo / hoax / a / surely  
\_\_\_\_\_
- upstream / plant / perhaps / nuclear / a / there's  
\_\_\_\_\_
- might / fish / be / it / two  
\_\_\_\_\_
- imagine / it's / say / I'd / genuine / to / but / it's / hard  
\_\_\_\_\_

#### B Match sentence beginnings 1–5 in Exercise 4A with endings a)–e).

- \_\_\_\_\_ – why would anyone fake it?
- \_\_\_\_\_ just like twins who are connected.
- \_\_\_\_\_ and this is a genetic mutation.
- \_\_\_\_\_ with one on top of the other.
- \_\_\_\_\_ and someone's just playing a joke.

## VOCABULARY

### COLLOCATIONS: DECISIONS

**1** Complete the sentences. The first letter of each word has been given.

- Lying to him will g\_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_ all my principles.
- I intend to s\_\_\_\_\_ t\_\_\_\_\_ my principles.
- We're trying to a\_\_\_\_\_ the situation to see what went wrong.
- They can't p\_\_\_\_\_ o\_\_\_\_\_ the decision any longer. We need an answer.
- The committee have agreed to p\_\_\_\_\_ their decision until they have more facts.
- Are you asking me to b\_\_\_\_\_ all my principles?
- You should f\_\_\_\_\_ your principles rather than chase fame and fortune.
- Sue's asked us to e\_\_\_\_\_ the situation and give a recommendation.
- He'll need to e\_\_\_\_\_ the situation and get all the information about it.
- When do you think the government will a\_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_ a decision?
- We will have to l\_\_\_\_\_ i\_\_\_\_\_ the situation in detail.
- At the end of this long discussion we can finally r\_\_\_\_\_ a decision.

## VOCABULARY PLUS

### COMPOUND ADJECTIVES

**2** Complete the newspaper headlines. Form compound adjectives with one word from box A and one from box B.

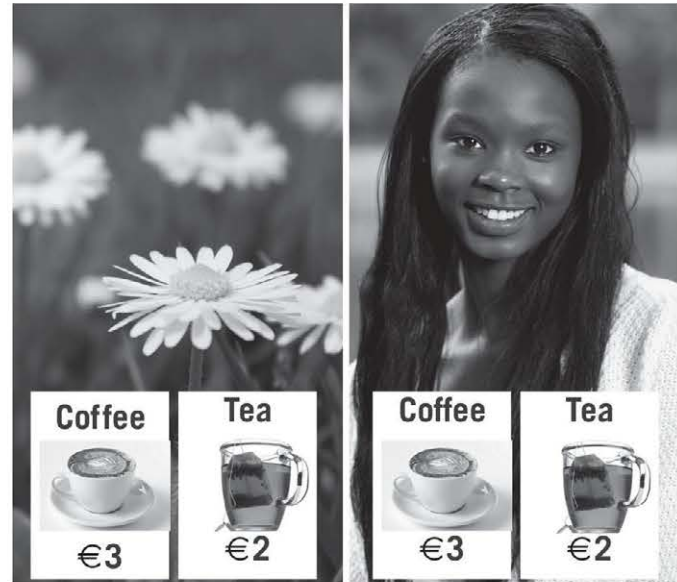
**A** time life long 15-metre third record  
five-year twenty-storey

**B** consuming time long high changing  
running high breaking

- Kidnappers given \_\_\_\_\_ jail sentences.
- Woman survives fall from \_\_\_\_\_ building.
- No solution to Russia and China's \_\_\_\_\_ argument over oil.
- Jules Fane wins cycle tour for \_\_\_\_\_ tenth time.
- Voting too \_\_\_\_\_ for young people – survey reveals under-18s won't vote.
- Prisoners escape over \_\_\_\_\_ wall.
- Two million dollars for \_\_\_\_\_ lucky lottery winner.
- Shirley Grey has \_\_\_\_\_ experience: singer leaves stage for charity work.

## LISTENING

**3 A** You are going to listen to a lecture about an experiment to test people's behaviour. Look at the posters. What do you think the experiment was about?



**B** **8.1** Listen to Part 1 and check your ideas.

**C** Listen again. Complete the summary using no more than three words for each answer.

The lecture is about differences between people's behaviour when they <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and how they behave when they <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

It is in three parts:

- A description of <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at Newcastle University.
- What this tells us about <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and behaviour.
- A comparison with other key findings in the area.

The aim of the experiment was to discover whether the <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ that you are being watched can alter your behaviour.

The scientists monitored <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in a staff room to see how much people paid for their tea and coffee. Above it was a poster with the prices. Each week they <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on the poster. They found that people were <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ when they were watched by eyes than when there were pictures of flowers. They put <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ as much money in.

**D** **8.2** Listen to Part 2 and answer the questions.

- Why is it important that our brains respond to faces and eyes?
- How do people behave if they think they are being watched?
- How did the researchers feel about the results?
- How could a similar poster be used for speed cameras?
- Where else could a poster be put?



## GRAMMAR

## PAST AND MIXED CONDITIONALS

**4 A** Read the articles and find the mistake in each picture.

## EURO-MILLION DILEMMA

One morning in 2014, Jim Farley was outside a Dublin bank when five bundles of cash fell from a security van which was driving away. He took them home and kept them for two days before phoning the bank. He rang from a payphone in a terrible state of anxiety as he didn't know what to do. The security director persuaded him to hand in the money. It came to almost €1,000,000.



## PARIS MÉTRO RESCUE



Jean LeBois was waiting for his métro train with his son, Roger, aged four. Suddenly, a man collapsed on the platform and then fell onto the tracks. A train was approaching and LeBois had to make a split-second decision whether to help. He leapt off the platform and pressed the man into the space between the tracks. Five carriages went overhead before the train stopped. Both men emerged safe to the applause of the onlookers.

**B** Read the articles again and complete the sentences.

- If Jim \_\_\_\_\_ (not walk) by the bank that day, he \_\_\_\_\_ (not see) the money.
- His call \_\_\_\_\_ (trace) if he \_\_\_\_\_ (phone) from a mobile.
- If he \_\_\_\_\_ (not come forward) with the money, it's possible that the police \_\_\_\_\_ (never find) it.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ (keep) the money if he \_\_\_\_\_ (not speak) to the security director.
- Jim \_\_\_\_\_ (be) rich now if he \_\_\_\_\_ (keep) the money.
- The man \_\_\_\_\_ (not fall) off the platform if he \_\_\_\_\_ (not collapse).

- If the train \_\_\_\_\_ (stop), Jean \_\_\_\_\_ (not leap) onto the tracks.
- The man \_\_\_\_\_ (be) dead now if Jean \_\_\_\_\_ (not jump) onto the tracks.
- If the space \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) quite deep, both men \_\_\_\_\_ (kill) by the train.
- If Jean \_\_\_\_\_ (have) more time to think, he probably \_\_\_\_\_ (not jump).

**5** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use between two and five words including the word given.

- I didn't know who he was so I didn't ask him for an autograph. HIM  
If I'd known who he was, I \_\_\_\_\_ for an autograph.
- You feel sick now because you ate too much. SICK  
You \_\_\_\_\_ if you had eaten less.
- Anya's skis weren't very good and this could be the reason she didn't win the race. MIGHT  
Anya \_\_\_\_\_ if she'd had better skis.
- The ambulance took a long time. Is that why they couldn't save him? COULD  
If the ambulance had got here sooner, \_\_\_\_\_ saved?
- You're living in a one-bedroom flat today because you didn't take my advice. LIVING  
If you'd taken my advice, \_\_\_\_\_ in a one-bedroom flat today.
- You weren't paying attention and so you didn't hear what I said. IF  
You would have heard what I said \_\_\_\_\_ attention.
- Angie left the sat-nav behind and we're lost. LOST  
We wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ remembered the sat-nav!
- In my situation, what other choices were there? YOU  
What \_\_\_\_\_ if you'd been in my situation?

**6 A** 8.3 Listen and write the phrases you hear.

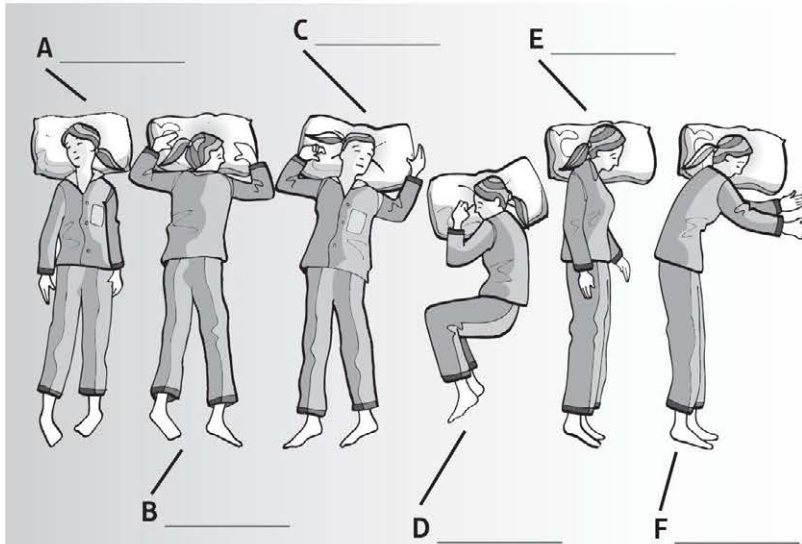
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

**B** Listen again and mark the stressed words and any examples of weak forms with /əv/. Then listen and repeat.



## READING

**1 A** Look at the picture. Which position do you usually sleep in?



### SLEEP POSITIONS GIVE CLUE TO THE NATION'S PERSONALITY

- 1** Some of Britain's best-known body language experts have been studying the four most common sleep positions for a well-known hotel chain. They think that our sleeping posture shows something about our character and how we see life. They believe that how we sleep reflects how we spent our day – under stress, relaxed and happy, bored and uncomfortable, feeling in or out of control. Here are the findings from the study.
- 2** Over half of people in Britain sleep with our knees up and our head down. It's called the Foetal position and more women than men sleep like this. People sleeping in this position are seeking comfort from the stresses and worries of their day. They are often shy and sensitive to others and like their lives to be ordered and under control.
- 3** The next most common position is the Log. As the saying goes, people who 'sleep like a log' lie on their side with their body straight and their arms down by their side. These people are trusting, easy-going and likely to be popular and part of the in-crowd. Unfortunately they often tend to be too trusting of other people, even to the point of being gullible. Around one third of British people adopt this sleep position. This position needs to be contrasted with the Soldier position in which people sleep on their back with their arms very close to them. It is said that people who sleep in this position are quiet perfectionists who have high expectations of themselves and others and really don't like to make a fuss about things.
- 4** A significant number of people in the UK sleep in the Yearner position with their arms out in front of them, as if they are chasing something. People who sleep in this position are open to possibilities but can be cynical. Worse still, once they make a decision – a good one or a bad one – they are not going to change their mind. Two similar positions are the Starfish and the Freefaller. People sleeping in the Starfish posture, lie on their back with both their hands above their heads. These people make great friends because they are good listeners and tend to be very supportive.
- 5** Freefallers make up the fourth major group of British people. Freefallers sleep lying on their front with their arms outstretched, as if they are falling through the sky. They feel that they are not in control of their lives and although they tend to be gregarious, below the surface they are nervy and thin-skinned.
- 6** So, with over 70% of British people sleeping in the Foetus or Freefall positions, the picture indicates that the UK is a worried and anxious nation.

**B** Read the article and label the pictures of the sleeping positions with the names.

**C** Which type of person are the quotes 1–6 about? Underline the part of the article which helped you decide.

- 1** 'Freida is always talking to people and gossiping, but if you say anything bad about her, she really doesn't like it.'
- 2** 'Go and talk to Sarah, she always makes time to listen to people.'
- 3** 'We threw a surprise party for him and he almost died of embarrassment.'
- 4** 'No, you can't persuade him. He's decided what he wants.'
- 5** 'Yeah, he wants everything to be perfect, so we're always working late.'
- 6** 'He loves a good party and he's so laid back.'

**D** Find words in the article which mean:

- 1** physical position (paragraph 1)
- 2** a small group of people seen by others to be particularly popular or fashionable (paragraph 3)
- 3** ready to believe anything (paragraph 3)
- 4** anxious or excited behaviour often about unimportant things (paragraph 3)
- 5** someone who likes being with other people (paragraph 5)
- 6** too sensitive (paragraph 5)

## VOCABULARY

### VALUES

**2** Rearrange the letters in bold to make words. The first letter is underlined.

- 1** Dave really lost oclntor of the meeting when the staff members started to shout.
- 2** Our company is very proud of its strong policies on ulityeaq.
- 3** My football team really shouldn't have lost the match – there's no cujstie sometimes.
- 4** Anyone with a sense of rsnefais would say that Renata was the better player even though she lost.
- 5** PC games are really bad for young people – they fill them with gresagsino.
- 6** Demet's reeegd made her spend all the prize money instead of sharing it with her family.
- 7** I find osiygtener one of the most appealing characteristics in a person.
- 8** You'll need to ask the boss – she's the one with all the wpore in this organisation.



## GRAMMAR

## -ING FORM AND INFINITIVE

## 3 A Underline the correct alternatives.

Scientists are learning more and more about sleeping and waking states. For example, did you know that <sup>1</sup>*daydream/daydreaming* can help you <sup>2</sup>*to solve/solving* complex tasks? This is because it activates the part of the brain associated with <sup>3</sup>*tackle/tackling* difficult problems. Also <sup>4</sup>*take/taking* a nap in the middle of the day refreshes your brain. It's like <sup>5</sup>*to clear/clearing* your email inbox so that there's room for new information. Interestingly, <sup>6</sup>*stay up/staying up* all night, as many students do before exams, increases the ability to hold new facts by forty percent. Some people don't seem <sup>7</sup>*to need/need* much sleep. UK prime minister Margaret Thatcher was famous for <sup>8</sup>*be able/being able* to run the country on just four hours sleep a night. However, the great scientist Albert Einstein tended <sup>9</sup>*require/to require* ten hours a night, perhaps because he solved problems by <sup>10</sup>*sleep/sleeping* on them.

## B Which fact in the text above do you think is incorrect?

## 4 Write sentences. Use an -ing form, an infinitive or an infinitive + to.

- 1 When / I / be / young, my father / teach / me / work hard / play hard.

When I was young, my father taught me to work hard and play hard.

- 2 Jake / hate / not / able / play / football / because of his bad leg.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 3 They / have / invite / Guido / give / talk / at / the conference.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 4 Olga / have / suggest / go for / picnic.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 What / you / want / me / do?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 6 Would / you / mind / tell / us / how old / you / be?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 7 The firm / not / expect / have to / pay for / the damage.

\_\_\_\_\_

- 8 Can / I / persuade / you / change / your mind?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 9 It / not be / worth / wait / any longer.

\_\_\_\_\_

## WRITING

## AN INFORMAL ARTICLE; LEARN TO USE LINKERS OF PURPOSE

## 5 A Underline the less formal alternative of the words and phrases in bold.

## CUTTING IT SHORT

## Have you ever wondered why some people are always late?

<sup>1</sup>**It is a question/That's something** I often ask myself. <sup>2</sup>**I'm always/I am constantly** late for trains, for concerts, for weddings, for everything! I do try, honestly, <sup>3</sup>**nevertheless/but** I've been like this all my life.

People hate latecomers. If you arrive late at a meeting <sup>4</sup>**it is thought/people think** you're lazy or disorganised or you don't actually <sup>5</sup>**think much of/respect** the other people there. But that isn't true. We time-challenged people live a life of constant anxiety and stress. I can't begin to count the money <sup>6</sup>**that has been wasted/I've wasted** by missing planes, classes, hair appointments, not to mention the stress of continually apologising for messing up other people's schedules.

However, help is at hand. If you're someone who always cuts things short, here are some suggestions to help you <sup>7</sup>**get over/recover from** this chronic problem. First of all ...

## B Do you identify with the writer of the article?

## C Correct the mistakes with linkers of purpose in the sentences.

- Sara was late because of her alarm clock wasn't working properly.
- You should make sure you put things in your calendar in order remind you to do them.
- Yuan went to the cinema early to getting a good seat.
- Take your car keys so that as you can drive if you get tired of walking.
- You need to study hard so to get a good test result.
- Because I was late, I waited until the break to go into class so as to upset the other students.
- On order not to disturb the boss, don't talk outside that room – she's in an important meeting.
- We use an online meeting maker so as get agreement from everyone on the best time to meet.

## D Complete the article in Exercise 5A with three suggestions and a conclusion (150–200 words).

## VOCABULARY

### BEHAVIOUR

#### 1 A Add vowels to make words.

- 1 d \_ pl \_ m \_ t \_ c
- 2 c \_ nfr \_ nt \_ t \_ \_ n \_ l
- 3 s \_ ns \_ bl \_
- 4 s \_ pp \_ rt \_ v \_
- 5 c \_ ll \_ b \_ r \_ t \_ v \_
- 6 s \_ ns \_ t \_ v \_
- 7 \_ nh \_ lpf \_ l
- 8 \_ ss \_ rt \_ v \_
- 9 f \_ c \_ s \_ d
- 10 t \_ ctf \_ l
- 11 \_ ggr \_ ss \_ v \_
- 12 d \_ r \_ ct

**B** Which adjectives above are positive (+), negative (-) or can be either (+/-)?

**C** Match the adjectives in Exercise 1A with quotes 1–10. Sometimes two adjectives are possible.

- 1 'You're late again, Jones! Get into my office and sit down! Now!' \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 'Oh, you look really tired. Lie down and rest. I'll bring you a cup of tea.' \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 'I prefer you in the other dress. This one makes you look overweight.' \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 'You touched the ball! You cheat!' \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 'I'll work on the charts for the report while you edit the text.' \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 'Look, I'm not angry but just tell me, why did Louise get a pay rise when I didn't?' \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 'OK, everyone. I think we're straying from the point. We need to get back to the main issue.' \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 'We don't deal with problems with your connection. You need to phone your broadband provider. You've already tried them? Well, it's nothing to do with us.' \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 'It's true that I don't have the receipt, but I only bought it here last week. Could I speak to your supervisor. She's at lunch? No problem, I'll wait.' \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 'If you want to lose weight, don't go on an extreme diet. Just eat slightly less and try and walk for half an hour a day.' \_\_\_\_\_

## FUNCTION

### HANDLING AN AWKWARD SITUATION

#### 2 A Put the words in the correct order to complete B's part of the conversation.



**A:** Is everything OK?

**B:** <sup>1</sup>I've / to / talk / something / about / been / there's / to / you / Actually, / meaning / .

**A:** Oh, is there a problem?

**B:** <sup>2</sup>you / get / the / to / want / wrong / I / don't / idea, / but / ...

**A:** That sounds bad.

**B:** <sup>3</sup>you / just / mobile / leave / on / that / often / It's / your / .

**A:** I don't understand.

**B:** <sup>4</sup>you're / annoying / And / it / and / that's / not / rings / when / here / .

**A:** But I need to keep it on in case my son phones.

**B:** <sup>5</sup>disturbing / trying / but / Yes, / people / are / work / when / to / it's / .

**A:** It's important that he can get straight through to me.

**B:** <sup>6</sup>I'm / understand / from / see / but / you / where / I / do / coming / ?

**A:** I suppose so.

**B:** <sup>7</sup>set / it / silent / you / when / could / not / to / here / Maybe / you're / .

**A:** What you mean just the 'vibrate' setting?

**B:** <sup>8</sup>feel / about / you / Yes, / how / would / that / ?

**A:** OK, that sounds reasonable. I'll do that from now on. Sorry about that.

**B:** Thanks, I'd appreciate it.

**B** 8.4 Listen to the conversation and repeat B's part. Pay attention to the stress and intonation.

## LEARN TO

### SOFTEN A MESSAGE

#### 3 8.5 Listen to B's part of the conversation and add the extra words you hear to the conversation in Exercise 2A.



## GRAMMAR QUANTIFIERS

**1 A** Read the descriptions and correct a quantifier in each sentence by crossing out, changing or adding one word.

- 1 Floor-to-ceiling windows allow you to enjoy lots of fantastic views of the city whilst the city enjoys plenty fantastic views of you.
- 2 The flat is in need of a little redecoration and lighting but it benefits from a large amount of walls, floors and ceilings.
- 3 A few flats with such excellent views ever come on the market and, as it is currently owned by an artist, each room is uniquely decorated.
- 4 The flat would be suitable for either a mushroom grower or someone who loves caves, as quite a few the rooms are on the lower ground floor.
- 5 The flat is in a lively area, close to a large number of shops and several of clubs, so it would benefit from some double glazing in the windows.

**B** Read the descriptions again. What is the problem with each flat?

## VOCABULARY REVIEW

**2 A** Look at the underlined sounds in each group. Circle the word with the different sound.

- 1 biased, deny, promise
- 2 reality, threaten, sketch
- 3 serial, circulation, generosity
- 4 persuade, tabloid, sensationalism
- 5 focused, confrontational, control
- 6 sensible, aggressive, assess

**B**  R4.1 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

**3** Complete the sentences with the correct word or phrase.

- 1 series/serial
  - a) I can't wait for the next episode of the \_\_\_\_\_ to find out what happens next.
  - b) They're doing a \_\_\_\_\_ on eastern cuisine; last week's was about Thai cooking and next week's is from Malaysia.
- 2 sitcom/sketch show
  - a) Al Shaw stars in this \_\_\_\_\_ about a high-flying executive who suddenly finds himself out of work.
  - b) Dean Murray is back in the \_\_\_\_\_ playing his familiar roles as the farmer who can't stand animals, the one-armed dentist and the policeman who can only speak in rhyme.
- 3 equality/greed
  - a) He was surprised at his own \_\_\_\_\_. There was enough to share but he had eaten all the cake.
  - b) She was made \_\_\_\_\_ officer in the company after she complained that women were not being promoted.
- 4 power/fairness
  - a) There's no \_\_\_\_\_ in the referee's decision to send another Italian player off the pitch.
  - b) The problem with concentrating all the financial \_\_\_\_\_ in one position is that no one else can make decisions.
- 5 explored/reached
  - a) They \_\_\_\_\_ the options and decided to sell the hotel.
  - b) They evaluated the situation carefully before they \_\_\_\_\_ a decision.
- 6 sticking to/assessing
  - a) He's \_\_\_\_\_ his principles and refusing to reveal the name of his informer.
  - b) He's \_\_\_\_\_ the situation at the moment.
- 7 sensitive/sensible
  - a) She's very \_\_\_\_\_ to other people's needs.
  - b) It's \_\_\_\_\_ to keep a note of your passport number.
- 8 assertive/tactful
  - a) You need to be \_\_\_\_\_ when dealing with him so as not to upset him.
  - b) You should be more \_\_\_\_\_. Don't let her bully you.

**VOCABULARY PLUS** MULTI-WORD VERBS

**4** Complete the sentences by adding *across, back, out* or *up* in the correct place.

- I'll have to take everything I said about the film. It was brilliant!
- I don't like her in person, but she comes well on TV.
- They're bringing a new version of the game next March.
- Some old friends in San Francisco put me for the night.
- The concert turned to be disappointing.

**GRAMMAR** REPORTED SPEECH

**5** Complete the reported speech sentences. Use between two and five words including the word given.

- 'I want to leave school,' Emilio said to his father.  
TOLD  
Emilio \_\_\_\_\_  
to leave school.
- 'Could you sing something for us?' the guys in the band asked me.  
WANTED  
The guys in the band \_\_\_\_\_  
something for them.
- 'You didn't give me your phone number,' Ben said.  
HIM  
Ben explained that I \_\_\_\_\_  
phone number.
- 'Why don't you like computer games?' Jane asked Rick.  
HE  
Jane asked Rick \_\_\_\_\_  
computer games.
- 'Were you working for Sarah at that time?' Harry asked.  
WORKING  
Harry asked me \_\_\_\_\_  
for Sarah at that time.
- 'I won't be seeing Katya until tomorrow,' she said.  
KATYA  
She said she \_\_\_\_\_  
until the next day.

**VOCABULARY** REPORTING VERBS

**6 A** Match the reporting verbs to the sentences.

agree admit apologise promise offer  
suggest deny threaten refuse accuse

- No, I'm paying for the meal. I won't let you. *refuse*
- I'm sorry if I have caused any embarrassment.
- We'll reduce taxes if you vote for us.
- Unless I get more money, I'm going to quit the show.
- You did it, Leona! You stole my wallet!
- We'll share the information with you.
- Let's take a break for a few minutes.
- OK, I stole €5,000 from the bank.
- I've never had cosmetic surgery.
- You want me to make a speech? OK, no problem.

**B** Write reported speech sentences using the reporting verbs for each of the sentences in Exercise 6A.

- He *refused to let me pay for the meal* \_\_\_\_\_.
- I \_\_\_\_\_.
- We \_\_\_\_\_.
- She \_\_\_\_\_.
- He \_\_\_\_\_.
- They \_\_\_\_\_.
- She \_\_\_\_\_.
- He \_\_\_\_\_.
- He \_\_\_\_\_.
- She \_\_\_\_\_.

**FUNCTION** ADDING EMPHASIS

**7** Complete the email extract with different words to complete the phrases that add emphasis.

The people in the flat below us are driving us  
<sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ crazy. Last Friday they had an all-night  
 party. I wouldn't have minded but the thing  
<sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ that they didn't warn us in advance and  
 there was no <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ we could sleep through  
 it. Why <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ earth do people need to have  
 music so loud? I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ hate it when people  
 are <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ thoughtless. I had <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a  
 sleepless night that I was in a bad mood all day and had  
 a <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ awful argument with Jack. It ended up  
 with him shouting, 'Well, you're the <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ who  
 wanted to move here in the first place!' and walking out.  
 Then the woman downstairs complained to me about the  
 shouting! That made me <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ furious!



## GRAMMAR PAST AND MIXED CONDITIONALS

8 Complete the phrases. Sometimes there is more than one possibility.

A: Looking back over your career so far, <sup>1</sup>you / do / things / differently if you could start again?

B: I'm very happy with my choices so even if I could, <sup>2</sup>I / not / want / change / anything professionally. As far as my personal life is concerned, I do wish I'd waited before settling down. <sup>3</sup>If / Angela and I / not / get married so young, then <sup>4</sup>we / still / be / together.

A: And <sup>5</sup>if / you / were / give / advice to me as an up-and-coming actor, <sup>6</sup>what / you / say?

B: <sup>7</sup>If / I / start / again now, <sup>8</sup>I / still / think / I / choose to work in the theatre to get as much basic experience as possible.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_

## VOCABULARY PLUS COMPOUND ADJECTIVES

9 Rewrite the sentences with the compound adjectives in brackets.

- 1 I'm sorry but I'll have to get back to work – this project takes a lot of time. (time-consuming)
- 2 In a race that broke all records, Daniel Nduka wins the London marathon. (record breaking)
- 3 The company tries to save money then suddenly come up with the funds when they're really needed. (money-saving)
- 4 I had to close my eyes before going into the room – it was so bright in there. (brightly lit)
- 5 I had to wait for five months before I had an operation to repair my knee. (five-month)

## GRAMMAR -ING FORM AND INFINITIVE

10 Complete the articles with the correct form of the verbs in the boxes.

express do look recognise be

## Right or Left: 1

Researchers in the UK have discovered that dogs tend <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ at the right side of human faces. The right side is known <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ better at <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ emotional states. Interestingly, dogs don't seem <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ this when they look at other animals. <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ human emotions is an important skill for a pet.

have watch process give sit

## Right or Left: 2

In an experiment, 74% of cinema goers would rather <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to the right of the screen. The right side of the brain is important for <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ emotional information. By <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the film from the right, people are choosing <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ themselves the best viewing experience. Interestingly, when told the film was poor, people didn't mind <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ a seat anywhere.

## FUNCTION HANDLING AN AWKWARD SITUATION

11 Underline the correct alternatives. In one case both are possible.

A: Ingrid, there's something I've <sup>1</sup>meant/been meaning to talk to you about.

B: Sure, Cristina. What's up?

A: I <sup>2</sup>don't want you/hope you don't take this <sup>3</sup>a wrong/the wrong way but you often look very tired.

B: What do you mean?

A: <sup>4</sup>It's just that/It's that just I've noticed you yawning sometimes and, well, a receptionist needs to look more welcoming to clients. <sup>5</sup>Do you know/Do you see what I mean?

B: You're right. I have been having difficulties sleeping recently.

A: How <sup>6</sup>would you feel/are you feeling about getting some advice? From your doctor?

B: Yes, that's probably a good idea. Sorry about this, Cristina.



## CHECK

Circle the correct option to complete the sentences.

- 1 That's not very \_\_\_\_\_ – telling her she's put on weight!  
a) collaborative b) unhelpful c) tactful
- 2 There were \_\_\_\_\_ things I would have changed but not many.  
a) quite few b) a few c) very few
- 3 The doctor told \_\_\_\_\_ to bed.  
a) that I should go b) me to go c) me going
- 4 I asked them to clean up the mess but they \_\_\_\_\_ to do it.  
a) refused b) threatened c) apologised
- 5 Companies should have rules about \_\_\_\_\_ so that no one is discriminated against.  
a) power b) control c) equality
- 6 My grandfather asked me \_\_\_\_\_ recently.  
a) what had I been doing b) what I'd been doing c) if I'd been doing
- 7 It's \_\_\_\_\_, but it looks like some kind of animal.  
a) difficult to say b) imagine c) seems to say
- 8 It was \_\_\_\_\_ fantastic news that I couldn't believe it at first.  
a) such b) so c) such a
- 9 You need to \_\_\_\_\_ the situation.  
a) follow b) go against c) assess
- 10 If Tom hadn't acted so quickly they \_\_\_\_\_ now.  
a) might have been killed b) weren't alive c) could be dead
- 11 I'm trying to go to the gym twice a week \_\_\_\_\_ get fitter.  
a) so b) for c) in order to
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ do it slowly or you could cut yourself.  
a) You should learn b) You'd better c) Practise
- 13 I like factual programmes so I don't watch \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) documentaries b) current affairs programmes c) reality shows
- 14 There is \_\_\_\_\_ traffic on the road because of the weather.  
a) hardly b) very little c) a small number of
- 15 Thousands of people \_\_\_\_\_ to vote.  
a) turned out b) brought out c) pulled out
- 16 Margit said \_\_\_\_\_ the next day.  
a) she'll do it b) she'd do it c) she's doing it
- 17 You often \_\_\_\_\_ good websites while you're looking for something else.  
a) put up with b) come across c) break into
- 18 I \_\_\_\_\_ him to phone Washington.  
a) suggested b) offered c) reminded
- 19 There's a difficult situation I've \_\_\_\_\_ to talk to Kurt about.  
a) what I mean b) been meaning c) taken the wrong way
- 20 Louise Becker's \_\_\_\_\_ is read by millions of people every day.  
a) sensationalism b) editorial page c) biased
- 21 You're \_\_\_\_\_ wanted to come!  
a) one who b) the one who c) the one
- 22 I don't want \_\_\_\_\_ get the wrong idea, but ...  
a) that you b) you to c) you
- 23 The paper has been accused of being \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) biased b) tabloid c) sensationalism
- 24 How long do you think it will take for them to \_\_\_\_\_ a decision?  
a) come to b) arrive c) stick to
- 25 If you \_\_\_\_\_ the lottery ticket, we'd be rich now.  
a) don't lose b) didn't lose c) hadn't lost
- 26 I really lost \_\_\_\_\_ of my temper when I saw that man kick his dog.  
a) control b) fairness c) aggression
- 27 If you'd been in my situation, what \_\_\_\_\_?  
a) would you do b) would you have done c) did you do
- 28 Hurry up. We've got to run \_\_\_\_\_ to get to the concert on time.  
a) for b) in order c) so
- 29 \_\_\_\_\_ ticket costs €20.  
a) Each b) Few c) All
- 30 It's OK to speak your mind, but why are you always so \_\_\_\_\_?  
a) focused b) assertive c) confrontational

RESULT /30





## LISTENING

**1 A** Look at the pictures. Can you think of a reason why you might NOT notice the animals?

**B** **9.1** Listen to the first part of a radio programme and answer the questions.

- 1 What is the best definition of 'inattention blindness'?
  - a) Losing your eyesight because of someone's carelessness
  - b) Failing to see things that are obvious because you are stressed
  - c) Not seeing one thing because you are focused on something else
- 2 Were your ideas about the pictures right?

**C** **9.2** Listen to the rest of the programme and put the topics in the correct order. One topic is mentioned twice and one is not mentioned.

- a) pilots
- b) motorcycles
- c) drivers
- d) footballers
- e) store security guards

**D** Listen again to the whole programme. Are the statements true (T), false (F) or is the information not given (NG)?

- 1 A quarter of the people who did the gorilla experiment didn't notice the gorilla.
- 2 If you're looking for someone with glasses, you might not notice someone with a parrot.
- 3 Drivers who are sending text messages might not notice a car stopping in front of them.
- 4 If you expect to see a particular word or name on a sign, you might not notice a synonym.
- 5 In a simulation, trained pilots were better at seeing unusual things on the runway than non-pilots.
- 6 A thief is more likely to fool a guard in a store by stealing openly.
- 7 It's safer to drive a car than to ride a motorcycle.
- 8 The expert gives the advice 'Expect the unexpected'.

## GRAMMAR

### -ING FORM AND INFINITIVE

**2 A** Underline the correct alternative.

- 1 a) After high school, I went on finding/to find work in order to earn money.  
b) After high school, I went on studying/to study and attended university because that was expected.
- 2 a) I remember locking/to lock my flat when I left it today, but it's possible that I didn't do it.  
b) I remembered locking/to lock my flat when I left it today, I'm 100 percent sure.
- 3 a) I'm trying learning/to learn English well enough to pass an advanced exam.  
b) I tried speaking/to speak English in case they understood it but they didn't.
- 4 a) I'll never forget meeting/to meet my English teacher for the first time.  
b) I've forgotten doing/to do my homework many times.
- 5 a) I had to stop thinking/to think about all of these sentences before answering.  
b) I've had to stop thinking/to think about my other work so that I could concentrate on this exercise.
- 6 a) I like studying/to study English at least fifteen minutes a day even if I'm not in the mood.  
b) I like travelling/to travel more than anything else.

**B** Tick the sentences above that are true for you.

- 3 Complete the story with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

## MY DAY AS A POLICE WITNESS



It was 2014 and I had witnessed a theft – in fact, I'd tried <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (catch) the thief, but when I caught up with him he pulled out a knife, so I stopped <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (chase) him and walked away. I remember <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (stand) there, thinking how silly the situation was, before I gave up. I like <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (be) helpful even when it's unpleasant or dangerous, so I didn't mind. Before I walked away though, I remembered <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (memorise) his face, in case the police asked me for a description; but I made a mistake, because I forgot <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (pay) attention to his height. Well, the police did call me a few days later and said they'd caught the guy and needed me to identify him in a line-up. So I went in, and looked at the eight faces ... they asked me which was the thief, but I just went on <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (look) at the faces, because they ALL looked like the thief. I tried <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (picture) him with my eyes closed, but it didn't work. In the end I picked someone – the biggest, tallest one – because that was my recollection, that the guy was big and threatening. The one I picked turned out to be a police officer himself (who later went on <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (become) the chief of police), and the real thief was the shortest guy in the line-up. On my way out, I stopped <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (say) goodbye to the head detective, and he just said 'Don't call us, we'll call you.'

## VOCABULARY

### CRIME

- 4 Find ten words for crimes in the wordsearch.

A	M	C	A	I	P	R	I	C	B	C	H	L	S
R	V	A	N	D	A	L	I	S	M	K	Q	V	H
S	R	K	I	D	N	A	P	P	I	N	G	A	O
O	L	T	I	S	N	V	M	U	C	M	Q	Q	P
N	P	X	X	A	Z	Y	Q	H	L	N	K	R	L
Y	S	R	K	V	H	W	C	K	O	J	J	P	I
S	T	A	L	K	I	N	G	X	K	V	T	S	F
Q	Z	Z	W	A	V	P	S	H	E	C	V	D	T
W	L	P	S	V	S	H	A	C	K	I	N	G	I
L	V	Y	Y	L	C	B	R	I	B	E	R	Y	N
I	D	E	N	T	I	T	Y	T	H	E	F	T	G
C	O	U	N	T	E	R	F	E	I	T	I	N	G
W	Q	J	L	F	Q	B	M	U	G	G	I	N	G
F	U	Q	E	Y	J	R	N	V	P	W	C	O	H

## VOCABULARY PLUS

### DEPENDENT PREPOSITIONS

- 5 A Complete the news stories by adding the dependent prepositions *for*, *from*, *with* or *of* to the verbs in bold. The prepositions don't always follow the verbs immediately.

**5th February** – An Edinburgh man was <sup>1</sup>**charged** murder today. Police say they <sup>2</sup>**suspect** 48-year-old Bill Haller committing a series of murders, but a senior police officer says they will only <sup>3</sup>**accuse** Haller one, the famous Scarsdale murder.

**9th February** – A police car transporting prisoner Bill Haller crashed on the motorway today and burst into flames. Haller managed to <sup>4</sup>**rescue** the driver the burning vehicle just before it exploded. The mayor <sup>5</sup>**thanked** the prisoner <sup>6</sup>**saving** the driver [who by coincidence is the mayor's son] certain death.

**11th February** – Bill Haller was <sup>7</sup>**cleared** the Scarsdale murder today as police <sup>8</sup>**arrested** another suspect the murder. The mayor praised the police for their detective work and <sup>9</sup>**apologised** to Haller the mistake. Haller made a statement <sup>10</sup>**criticising** the police their actions and <sup>11</sup>**blamed** an ambitious senior police officer charging him without evidence.

- B Read the stories again. Why do you think the man was released?



## READING

### 1 A Complete the article with the words in the box.

pride greed sympathy fear curiosity

**B** The quotes are from people who fell for one of the scams in the article. Write the correct number of each scam next to the sentences.

- a) That's strange, I can't access my email anymore.
- b) I sent the subscription form in and the money last week. They haven't replied yet.
- c) Everyone should give something, we can't just let them starve.
- d) Look at this. I've got an uncle in Italy. Or I used to have one.
- e) Excuse me, I'm here for the awards. I believe there's a room booked in my name.

**C** Match the meanings 1–8 with the words and phrases in bold in the article.

- 1 takes advantage of
- 2 it really exists and it's legal
- 3 unfortunate situation
- 4 fame
- 5 clever and indirect
- 6 you can't check it
- 7 weakness
- 8 fake

# FIVE REASONS YOU'LL FALL FOR AN INTERNET SCAM

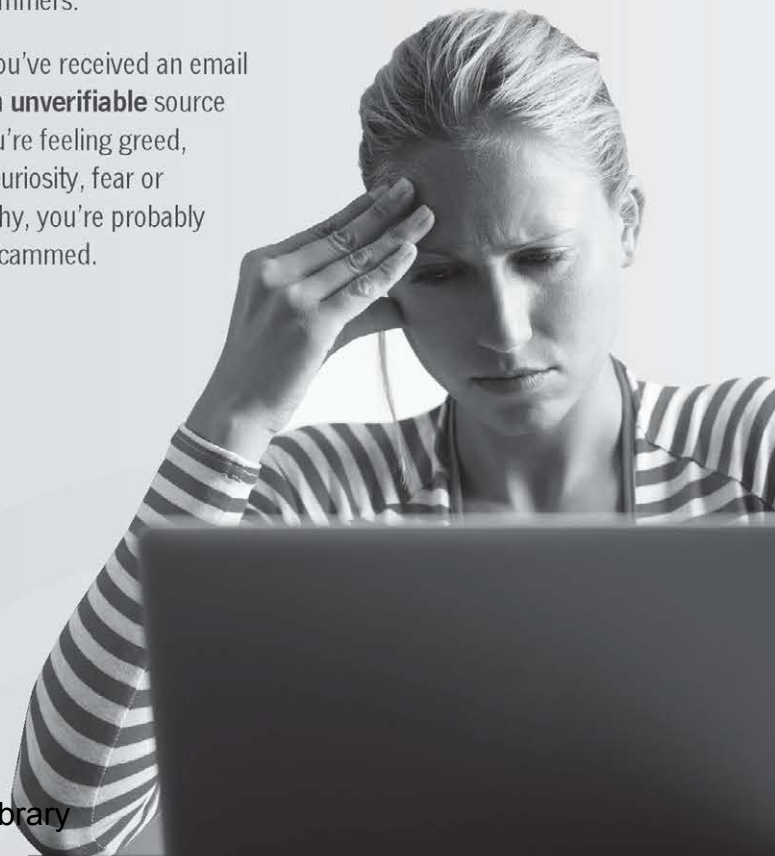
Most of us think we're too clever to be caught by an email scam, but hustlers know they can always find someone naive enough to fall for their tricks. They also know five key facts about human nature, and one of these is behind every email scam you'll come across.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_: You would think people would learn, but the desire for more money is our greatest **vulnerability**. From the instant lottery ('You've already won!') to an inheritance from the relative you never knew you had, the scam always aims at the same thing: to get you to pay in advance in the hope that you'll get back ten or a hundred times that much later.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_: It's amazing how many of us imagine we've written a great novel, or at least a good poem, and have such a strong desire for **recognition** that we'd actually pay for it. The publishing scam works in clever stages, starting with a simple request to submit your poem. You then find out it's been chosen as a semi-finalist in a poetry contest; you only need to send in some money to register. Eventually you're asked for a large amount of cash to cover travel costs so that you can go and receive your prize at the (non-existent) presentation ceremony!
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_: If you find yourself paying for a 'premium subscription' to a service that promises to give you access to information – about yourself or someone else – you might be paying for a genuine, functioning service, but it might just be another scam that **preys on** your desire to know more. These often start out by telling you that THEY have information about YOU and that you can protect that information by subscribing; or they offer information about anyone you want. There are agencies that really do sell personal information (for example, credit ratings), but many of these offers are **bogus**.

- 4 \_\_\_\_\_: The email may contain a direct threat with an equally direct demand for money or it may be more **subtle** and tell you that your bank account has been attacked and you need to enter your personal details, including your PIN, to protect it; or that your email account will be cancelled unless you verify your password. Of course, once the scammers have this information, they can get to your money or pretend they're you and use that disguise to get money.

- 5 \_\_\_\_\_: Who can ignore a photograph of a suffering child or the **plight** of disaster victims in need? Sadly, for every **legitimate** charity in operation there are probably dozens of fake charities using our natural kindness and compassion to get us to transfer money to a bank account somewhere, but the end result is that we're just making millionaires out of the scammers.

So, if you've received an email from an **unverifiable** source and you're feeling greed, pride, curiosity, fear or sympathy, you're probably being scammed.



## VOCABULARY

### SYNONYMS

**2 A** Read the forum entries. Which thing do you think is the worst?

#### WHAT'S THE WORST THING YOU DID WHEN YOU WERE A KID?

- We went door to door and we would <sup>1</sup>**pose as** boy scouts raising money for a charity. We used to <sup>2</sup>**fool** everyone, but it wasn't hard – we had the right uniforms.
- I used to <sup>3</sup>**swap** my neighbour's newspaper every day for the previous day's paper. He never noticed.
- My friend and I took sweets from the local shop. One of us would <sup>4</sup>**divert** the shopkeeper's **attention** while the other filled her bag.
- I used to ask people for change and when they took it out of their pocket I'd <sup>5</sup>**snatch** it and run away.
- I told people I'd been robbed and needed two euros to get home. They used to <sup>6</sup>**fall for it** every time and I made at least ten euros an hour.

**B** Put the letters in order to make synonyms. The first letter is underlined.

- a) sadttric \_\_\_\_\_  
 b) cedivee \_\_\_\_\_  
 c) nedterp ot eb \_\_\_\_\_  
 d) brag \_\_\_\_\_  
 e) cwiths \_\_\_\_\_  
 f) eb keant ni \_\_\_\_\_

**C** Match the words and phrases in bold in Exercise 2A with the synonyms a)–f) in Exercise 2B.

## GRAMMAR

### PAST MODALS OF DEDUCTION

**3** Underline the correct alternatives. Sometimes there is more than one possibility.

**A:** Oh no! It <sup>1</sup>*can't have/might have/must have* gone!

**B:** What's up?

**A:** You <sup>2</sup>*might have/must have/should have* left the car unlocked. The doors are open, no windows are broken and my bag's gone!

**B:** I thought I'd locked it, but I <sup>3</sup>*might have/can't have/shouldn't have* left it open. I clearly remember locking it.


**A:** Or the thief <sup>4</sup>*could have/must have/should have* been good at picking locks.

**B:** No, I <sup>5</sup>*can't have/might have/shouldn't have* left it unlocked. I'm certain I did lock it. They <sup>6</sup>*could have/must have/might have* picked the lock somehow.

**A:** Well, whatever happened, they <sup>7</sup>*must have/can't have/might have* gone far. We've only been gone for ten minutes. Call the police.

**4** Complete the sentences with a past modal of deduction and a suitable verb.

- 1 They \_\_\_\_\_ home yet – they only left half an hour ago and it's 60 km away.
- 2 Ali and Fatima \_\_\_\_\_ each other in college; they're always talking about their time there.
- 3 You \_\_\_\_\_ your keys when you took out your wallet or maybe you left them in the café.
- 4 This essay is too good to be Leila's own work; it \_\_\_\_\_ from the internet.
- 5 I \_\_\_\_\_ my hand while I was peeling the potatoes or maybe later.
- 6 But you \_\_\_\_\_ him in town yesterday – he's been abroad all week.
- 7 You \_\_\_\_\_ all my chocolate. There's no one here except me and you and I haven't had any of it!
- 8 I think we're on the wrong road. We \_\_\_\_\_ a turning somewhere.

**5**  **9.3** Listen and complete the sentences with a past modal of deduction and a verb. Then listen and repeat.

- 1 It \_\_\_\_\_ you.
- 2 It \_\_\_\_\_ me.
- 3 You \_\_\_\_\_ her.
- 4 They \_\_\_\_\_ there.
- 5 We \_\_\_\_\_ them.

## WRITING

### A 'HOW TO' LEAFLET; LEARN TO AVOID REPETITION

**6 A** Put the words in order to complete the tips for how to keep secure at an ATM.

- 1 nearby / you / make / characters / sure / check / suspicious / that / there / no / are / .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 your / your / entering / be / cover / fingers / careful / PIN / when / particularly / to / .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 count / to / try / quickly / money / the / .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 your / put / to / time / take / safely / away / card / .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 if / to / attention / around / tries / your / turn / someone / get / never / .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 be / nearby / always / people / of / aware / .  
\_\_\_\_\_

**B** Write six tips for a leaflet: *How to avoid being a victim of identity theft*. Use a variety of ways to give the advice.



## FUNCTION

## REPORTING AN INCIDENT

**1 A** Find the mistakes in the underlined phrases and write the correct versions below.

**A:** I've just been robbed, on the underground, by a pickpocket.

**B:** What happened?

**A:** Well, this guy got on the train and he reminded me to that English football player ... <sup>2</sup>wait, my mind's gone blink. Oh yeah, David Beckham.

**B:** David Beckham? Didn't you wonder why he was travelling on the underground?

**A:** <sup>3</sup>It never occupied me, no. Well, then everyone crowded round with their phonecams.

**B:** Typical!

**A:** I had to push my way past them and before I was realising what was happening, my wallet was gone, right out of my bag.

**B:** Did you see or feel anyone take it?

**A:** <sup>5</sup>No, in fact only it was a minute later that I realised they'd done it. <sup>6</sup>It was all happened so fast and I was in a hurry anyway.

**B:** So the David Beckham lookalike must have been a distraction.

**A:** Yeah, and he must have had someone working with him.

**B:** Well, the people with phonecams, maybe they ...

**A:** Do you think so? They seemed to like students, but ...

**B:** Oh, definitely, it was a pickpocket gang. That's how they work.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_

**B** ▶ 9.4 Listen and check. Then listen and say A's part at the same time as the recording.

## VOCABULARY

## INCIDENTS

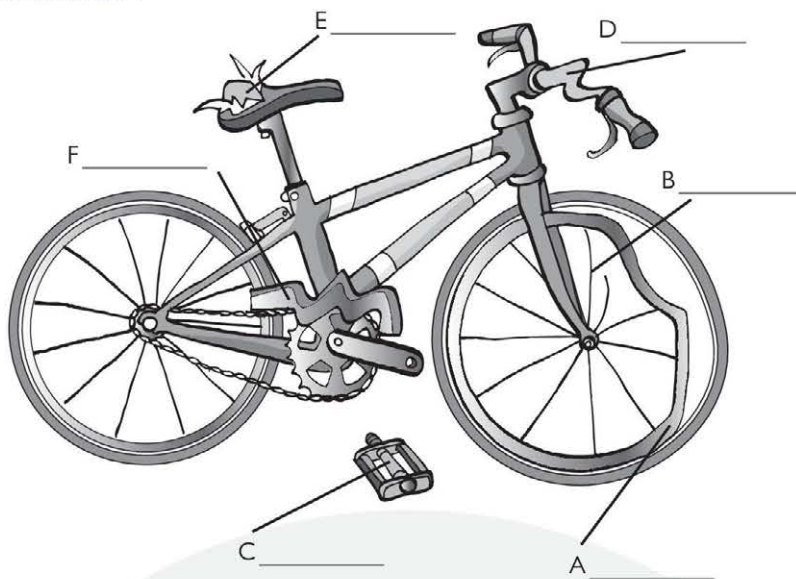


**2** Complete the account of a bad dream with one word in each gap.

I was cooking when I heard a loud crash outside. I went out to see what it was – a driver had tried to avoid knocking <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a penguin crossing the road and had run <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a second penguin who was just behind the first one. I was trying to help when the driver pointed at my window and I saw that the frying pan was on <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I tried the door but I realised I'd locked myself <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ so I picked up the first penguin and tried to use it to break <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the door. Its wings suddenly grew huge and it flew off so then I tried to climb in through the bathroom window but I got <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. The driver pulled me out and for some reason I then decided to climb onto the roof but I lost my balance and fell <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I must have got knocked <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ because the next thing I remember was opening my eyes and seeing Brad Pitt standing there with an empty bottle saying, 'Sorry, we've run out of water'. Then I woke up!

## LEARN TO

## REPHRASE



**3 A** Label the parts of the bicycle A–F with the words in the box.

pedal chain guard handlebar spokes rim saddle

**B** ▶ 9.5 Listen to the conversation or read the audio script on page 81 to check.



## READING

**1 A** Look at the photo and read the question on the forum. How would you answer it? Can you give an example?

**B** Read the forum and match comments 1–7 with categories a)–d).

- a) sound 1
- b) image
- c) situation
- d) other

**C** Seven sentences have been removed from the article. Complete the article with sentences a)–g).

- a) I guess I identify with the character from the start and so it feels like it's me who's trapped.
- b) Maybe it reminds me of my early childhood, that feeling of being lost, of hearing my own voice crying out for help.
- c) And then there's that fast bit in *Friday the 13th*, they have the whole orchestra playing ...
- d) Darkness and shadow can have the same effect – the effect of hiding the evil character but letting you see just enough to imagine its shape and form.
- e) You know that partly because they're not a main character and they're not needed to play the story out.
- f) It's similar, I guess, when there's a sinister little boy or girl, or twins in old-fashioned clothes ...
- g) Some are also made from made-up compound nouns, like *Cloverfield*, *Skinwalkers*, *Wickerhouse*.

**D** Find words in the forum that mean:

- 1 make a high-pitched sound (paragraph 1)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 strange and frightening (paragraph 3)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 damaged or made immoral (paragraph 4)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 talking quickly (paragraph 6)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 quick moment (paragraph 7)  
\_\_\_\_\_

## FILM FAN FORUM

This week we asked:

**What makes a horror film scary for you?**

- 1** I'm a big fan of horror film music and I think that's the thing that really carries the fear factor for me. You get slow creepy music like in *Jaws*, you know buh-dup-buh-dup-buh-dup-buh-dup, ...<sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, or the screaming shock music like in *Psycho*, where suddenly when the shower curtain opens, the violins shriek incredibly loudly. Every time I see that scene I jump out of my seat and it's the music that does it.
- 2** Vulnerability is what gets me. A character is put into a position where they can't really protect themselves against something terrible, whether they're alone, trapped in a closed space, or walking down a dark stairway or narrow hallway, or in a forest that's overgrown and hard to walk through, and basically not knowing what's going on, but knowing it's not good.<sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_
- 3** I think the title of a film has quite an impact. If it's good, it somehow captures the whole experience of the film, so even years after seeing *The Omen*, if I heard that title, I'd relive the feeling. The really good titles seem to follow a pattern, for example, 'the' followed by a word ending with -ing, for example, *The Haunting*, *The Shining*, *The Vanishing*.<sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Or you get odd, eerie words after 'the': *The Ring*, *The Uninvited* and, of course, *The Omen*. Very scary, I don't know why.
- 4** A kid's bicycle upside-down with one of its wheels turning. A broken doll. A child's shoe. I see a shot of one of those and I hide under my seat.<sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ I think it has to do with the innocence of childhood being corrupted by evil.
- 5** There's a kind of scene in a lot of horror films that always gets me. I call it the 'innocent victim' scene. You'll have a character who's often a very likeable old guy or old lady who does a simple job like running a shop or working in a restaurant. What happens is something like they close up the shop, get into their car, drive home in darkness, pull into their driveway ... and so on, and you know that at any moment something very bad is going to happen to them, but you don't know exactly when.<sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_
- 6** When the sound track has sound effects that sound a bit like human voices, that really scares me. So like religious chants or women's voices chattering. You almost hear words but not quite. Or a child's voice, that gives me the shivers.<sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_
- 7** When you get just a glimpse of the villain or evil being. So he or she walks by a window or is spotted by a character just for a flash and then is out of sight.<sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ It really makes the evil come alive in your mind because your imagination starts racing, generating images.





## VOCABULARY

### ADJECTIVES TO DESCRIBE FILMS

#### 2 Add vowels to make words.

- |                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 f _st-p _c _d        | 6 gr _pp _ng                  |
| 2 g _ry                | 7 t _ _ch _ng                 |
| 3 hyst _r _c _l        | 8 cr _ _py                    |
| 4 c _ntr _v _rs _ _l   | 9 _ _tst _nd _ng              |
| 5 f _ll _f s _sp _ns _ | 10 th _ _ght-<br>pr _v _k _ng |

## GRAMMAR

### RELATIVE CLAUSES

#### 3 A Underline the correct alternatives.

### THE PROBLEM WITH CINEMAS

<sup>1</sup>What/When/Whose I was younger, one thing I used to do was to go and see new films as soon as they came out but I've stopped because of the way <sup>2</sup>who/what/that people behave there. The cinema should be a place <sup>3</sup>which/where/when you are transported to another world but this is impossible because:

- a mobile phone rings, <sup>4</sup>when/which/what completely kills the moment. People <sup>5</sup>who/whose/what leave their mobile phones on are thoughtless; people <sup>6</sup>who/whose/when phones ring should be sent out.
- people act like they're at home, by <sup>7</sup>whom/where/which I mean they have conversations, sometimes <sup>8</sup>where/when/which there's something really moving happening on screen. You hear about times in the day <sup>9</sup>what/when/which something went wrong instead of the dialogue.
- children, <sup>10</sup>which/who's/whose parents should control them better, kick your seat every time they laugh.

**B** In which examples above is it possible to leave out the relative pronoun?

#### 4 Make sentences containing relative clauses with the prompts. The word in bold immediately follows the relative pronoun.

- 1 A biopic / be / a film / **tells** / the life story / famous person.  
*A biopic is a film which tells the life story of a famous person.*
- 2 The biopic / I want to review today / be / **Raging Bull**, / **be** / the story of a famous boxer.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Robert de Niro, / **play** / the part of Jake La Motta, / be / absolutely extraordinary.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The film / be / made at a time / **most** biopics / be of heroic figures.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The film, / **be** / directed by Martin Scorsese, / be / now recognised as a masterpiece.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 De Niro / become / interested when he read the book / on / **story** / be / based.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## WRITING

### A REVIEW; LEARN TO USE ADVERB + PAST PARTICIPLE COMBINATIONS

#### 5 A Rearrange the letters to make adverbs that collocate with the past participles.

- 1 ghlhyi \_\_\_\_\_ / ylediw \_\_\_\_\_ praised
- 2 hyhlars \_\_\_\_\_ / oyghlwehminve \_\_\_\_\_ / eahvliy \_\_\_\_\_ criticised
- 3 klulfysil \_\_\_\_\_ / iisetvsynle \_\_\_\_\_ directed
- 4 ptlnnoagyi \_\_\_\_\_ / nlnvgnoiicyc \_\_\_\_\_ acted

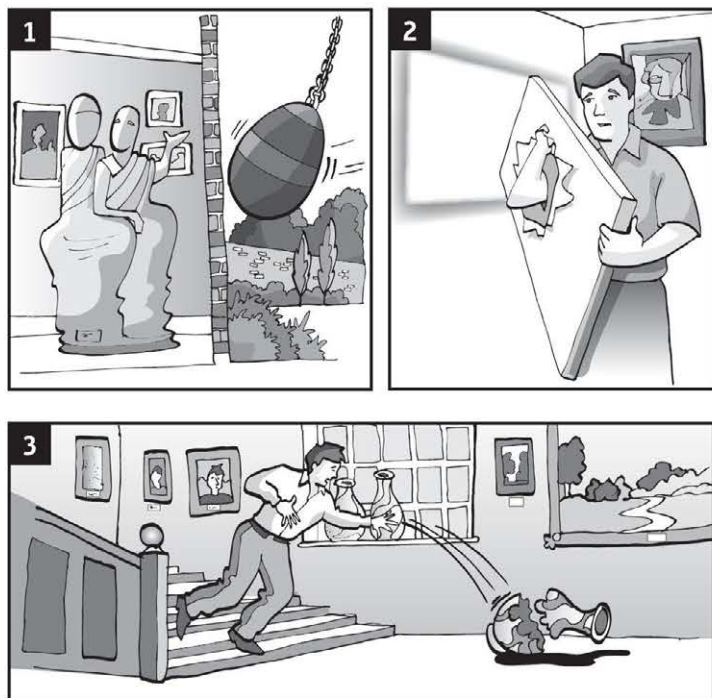
#### B Complete the sentences with one of the collocations above.

- 1 a) Audiences all over the world have applauded the film.  
The film has been \_\_\_\_\_.
- b) Critics have given it very positive reviews.  
It has been \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 a) There wasn't a critic who said a positive thing about his last movie.  
His last movie was \_\_\_\_\_.
- b) The reviews weren't just negative, they were very negative.  
The film was \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 a) It wasn't an easy script, but Spielberg showed his talent in the way he directed it.  
The script was \_\_\_\_\_.
- b) The topic is a delicate one, but Bigelow showed she could handle this in her direction of the film.  
The film was \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 a) The acting in that scene made me cry.  
That scene was \_\_\_\_\_.
- b) Morgan Freeman's acting was so good, I actually believed he was the real Nelson Mandela.  
The role of Nelson Mandela was \_\_\_\_\_.

## GRAMMAR

## PARTICIPLE CLAUSES

**1 A** Read the article and circle one mistake in each picture.



## DAMAGED GOODS

When a woman <sup>1</sup>took/taking an art class at a New York museum tripped and fell into a Picasso painting, <sup>2</sup>tear/tearing a fifteen-centimetre hole in the canvas, the public gasped and giggled, <sup>3</sup>shocked/shocking at how anyone could get so close to a valuable work of art. But museums, <sup>4</sup>pressed/pressing to attract as many paying customers as possible, often give visitors considerable access to works of art and this can carry risks. Similar incidents have happened in other collections.

- A visitor <sup>5</sup>walked/walking down the stairs in a Cambridge museum stumbled into some 17th-century Chinese vases, <sup>6</sup>shattered/shattering the vases into hundreds of pieces.
- A drawing by a famous artist, <sup>7</sup>valued/valuing at over £80,000, was put through a paper shredder by a worker at a London auction house. The worker, deeply <sup>8</sup>embarrassed/embarrassing by the incident, has managed to keep his (or her) identity a secret.
- A housekeeper <sup>9</sup>employed/employing by a wealthy German family <sup>10</sup>lived/living in a villa near Berlin knocked down a Ming dynasty plate.
- A painting by the Italian, Giorgio de Chirico, <sup>11</sup>displayed/displaying in a house in the Netherlands, was damaged when a demolition ball came through the wall, <sup>12</sup>put/putting a large hole through the painting.
- At the London National Gallery a painting <sup>13</sup>was/being removed from a wall was broken in two. Apparently the glue <sup>14</sup>used/using to hold sections of the frame wasn't strong enough.

**B** Underline the correct alternatives in the article in Exercise 1A.

**2 A** Replace the underlined phrases with phrases with participles. Make changes to the rest of the sentence where necessary.

1 The people who lived on the other side of the river were trapped.

The people living on the other side of the river were trapped.

2 Anyone who is planning to go home early or who wants to take a break should let us know.

3 As I walked out of the restaurant, I ran into my old boss, who was coming in.

4 I used to work with the woman who lives next door.

5 I left the party quickly and didn't tell anyone that I was unwell.

6 She carried a child under each arm and ran out of the blazing building.

7 He jumped up because he was frightened by the loud bang, as he mistook the door for a gun.

8 Walls which have been painted white tend to attract more graffiti.

**B** **10.1** Listen and check. Then listen and say the sentences at the same time as the recording, paying attention to stress and intonation.

## VOCABULARY

## THE ARTS

**3** Add vowels to make words.

- 1 We couldn't get tickets, the show was a s\_\_ll-\_\_t.
- 2 He's what they call an 'lt\_\_rn\_\_t\_\_v\_\_' comedian, which means I wouldn't take my grandmother to see him!
- 3 The film has got r\_\_v\_\_ r\_\_v\_\_ws in most papers.
- 4 It was a gr\_\_nd-br\_\_k\_\_ng performance, completely different from anything I've seen before.
- 5 The show is amazing! A real m\_\_st-s\_\_!
- 6 Her interpretation of the role of Juliet has cr\_\_t\_\_d \_\_st\_\_r amongst the critics.
- 7 They stopped playing small clubs once they went m\_\_nstr\_\_m and became popular.
- 8 The musical was a fl\_\_p and closed after one week.
- 9 I don't know what all the hyp\_\_ was about. She was awful!
- 10 The main dancer was ill and someone else took his place, which was a real l\_\_td\_\_wn.



## LISTENING

**4 A** Look at the photos. Which one do you think is better and why? Think of three reasons.



**B** 10.2 Listen to Part 1 of a talk about how to take a good photo and circle the best alternative.

- 1 The main problem with the light is that ...
  - a) it's behind the photographer.
  - b) it's shining into the lens.
  - c) it's too direct and creates a flat effect.
- 2 The fact that the subject is in the centre ...
  - a) is good because it's in sharp focus.
  - b) is bad because it leaves space at either side of her.
  - c) is bad because it cuts off her legs.
- 3 The problem with the background is that ...
  - a) it's not interesting.
  - b) it's not completely in focus.
  - c) it's a missed opportunity.
- 4 The person taking the picture ...
  - a) zoomed in too close.
  - b) is standing too far away.
  - c) didn't look at the woman's face carefully.
- 5 The last problem the speaker mentions ...
  - a) is that the woman is looking at the camera.
  - b) is that the photographer is too tall.
  - c) doesn't apply to this photograph.

**C** 10.3 Listen to Part 2 and complete the notes. Use no more than three words for each gap.

## THE FIVE RULES

- 1 Position yourself so that the light is coming \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Divide the screen into \_\_\_\_\_ and place the subject at one of the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Make sure the background is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 You should be \_\_\_\_\_ to the subject.
- 5 Adjust your \_\_\_\_\_ so that the lens and the subject's eyes are at \_\_\_\_\_.

## VOCABULARY PLUS

## TWO-PART PHRASES

**5 A** Complete the advice for studying English.

**Do you ever get sick and <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of feeling you're not making progress?**

Everybody who learns a language has their ups and <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ along the way. Follow our dos and <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for language study and we guarantee your English will improve in leaps and <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_!

**DO** find a place with peace and <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to do your studying.

**DON'T** study off and <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, skipping days, or you'll make much slower progress. Spend at least ten minutes a day doing something in English, even just studying words.

**DO** watch a film in English now and <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, at least once a month, and don't worry about understanding every word – just enjoy it!

**DO** record yourself in English once in a while and listen to the recording. Most mobile phones can make a rough and <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ recording that's good enough for this task.

**DO** speak English with anyone who will speak English with you, even if their English is not as good as yours. There are pros and <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to practising with someone below your level, but in fact it can be very valuable because you'll be thinking in English.

**DON'T** cram! When you've got an exam, look at the test date and plan your revision. Make sure you've completed what you need to do within your plan, give or <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a few days.

**DO** learn from your mistakes. When you do a test or exam, go back and study the exam through and <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and think about how to improve weak areas.

There's lots more advice, we could go on and <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ but you should really get back to studying!

**B** Tick which advice you think is good.



## FUNCTION

### GIVING A TOUR

#### 1 A Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 visit / worth / it's / a / well  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 the / over / let's / to / head  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 to / they / interrupt / had / supposedly,  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 not, / or / it / believe / took / it  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 was / as / originally / it / built  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 were / well, / founded / they / in  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 he / that / goes / story / the / used  
\_\_\_\_\_

#### B 10.4 Listen and draw any links between the words in the phrases. Then listen and repeat.

*It's well worth a visit*

#### C Complete the conversation with phrases from Exercise 1A. Write the number of the phrase in the correct place.

- A: Here we are at the famous Leaning Tower of Pisa.  
(a) \_\_\_\_\_ a bell-tower for the cathedral.
- B: It looks like it's going to fall over!
- A: It won't. Not today. (b) \_\_\_\_\_ 177 years to build.
- B: Why did it take so long?
- A: (c) \_\_\_\_\_ its construction because Pisa was constantly at war.
- B: Didn't Galileo live in Pisa?
- A: Yes. (d) \_\_\_\_\_ the leaning tower to demonstrate the rules of gravity, by dropping things off the top.
- B: Is that true?
- A: Who knows, really. (e) \_\_\_\_\_ Piazza dei Cavalieri.
- B: Oh yes, that's such a beautiful square.
- A: Well, my favourite restaurant, Ristorante alle Bandierine, is on the way. (f) \_\_\_\_\_.
- B: Sounds good to me.



## VOCABULARY

### DIMENSIONS

#### 2 A Write the noun and verb forms of each adjective.

- |          |               |                 |
|----------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1 long   | <u>length</u> | <u>lengthen</u> |
| 2 short  | _____         | _____           |
| 3 narrow | _____         | _____           |
| 4 wide   | _____         | _____           |
| 5 broad  | _____         | _____           |
| 6 thick  | _____         | _____           |
| 7 deep   | _____         | _____           |
| 8 high   | _____         | _____           |
| 9 large  | _____         | _____           |

#### B Complete the sentences with the correct form of words from Exercise 2A.

- 1 The jury needs to \_\_\_\_\_ down its choices before choosing the finalists.
- 2 He doesn't have much experience in other companies. He's a good candidate, but I think he needs to \_\_\_\_\_ his work experience.
- 3 The mystery of strange lights appearing in the sky in Russia \_\_\_\_\_ today as scientists said they couldn't explain them.
- 4 The \_\_\_\_\_ of the mixture is important – it shouldn't be too thin, so when you mix together the flour and water, wait for it to \_\_\_\_\_ before pouring it into the pan.
- 5 The \_\_\_\_\_ of the road isn't enough to add another lane – they'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 6 We need to check the \_\_\_\_\_ of the sofa to make sure it's not too long.
- 7 Lessons should be shorter and they should \_\_\_\_\_ the breaks in between.
- 8 This video tutorial will show you how to \_\_\_\_\_ a small photo.
- 9 The bridge was \_\_\_\_\_ enough for normal trucks to go underneath, but the \_\_\_\_\_ of those particular lorries was above the legal limit.
- 10 This exercise is too long – it needs to be \_\_\_\_\_.

## LEARN TO

### EXPRESS ESTIMATES

#### 3 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 1 There were under just 200 people at the party.
- 2 The homework should take you rough an hour to do.
- 3 We'll be arriving at 4 o'clock or so what?
- 4 The renovations cost downwards of one million euros.
- 5 We're expecting somewhere on a region of a thousand people for the conference.



## GRAMMAR -ING FORM AND INFINITIVE

## 1 Underline the correct alternatives.

## The rules of dinner party etiquette for women (1950)

Dining in high society can be stressful if you don't know the rules. Study these and you'll survive any dinner party.

- When you are about to sit down, stop *letting/to let* the man next to you hold the chair for you.
- Once seated, remember *turning/to turn* to your right and start a conversation with the man next to you.
- If the man has forgotten *turning/to turn* to his left, gracefully join the conversation on your left and always try *looking/to look* interested even if you are not.
- If another guest tells you they remember *meeting/to meet* you before, agree with them even you don't remember them.
- If someone drops a dish, don't stop *talking/to talk*, just go on *having/to have* the conversation you were having.
- If the person you're talking to doesn't seem to be listening, try *asking/to ask* questions – people love talking about themselves!

## VOCABULARY PLUS DEPENDENT PREPOSITIONS

## 2 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use between two and five words including the word given.

- He said he was sorry because he hadn't listened to her. APOLOGISED  
He \_\_\_\_\_ to her.
- People think that the website encourages bad behaviour. BLAME  
People \_\_\_\_\_ bad behaviour.
- TV companies will no longer be allowed to show adverts for fattening foods before 9p.m. BANNED  
TV companies will \_\_\_\_\_ adverts for fattening foods before 9p.m.
- Because of his quick reactions the plane didn't crash. SAVED  
His quick reactions \_\_\_\_\_.
- Kelly had always wanted to be an astronaut. DREAMT  
Kelly had always \_\_\_\_\_ an astronaut.
- The police think Jim helped the robbers escape. SUSPECTED  
Jim \_\_\_\_\_ the robbers escape.
- She thinks I don't help enough. CRITICISING  
She's always \_\_\_\_\_ enough.

## VOCABULARY REVIEW

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct word or phrase.

- deceive/fall for
  - I always \_\_\_\_\_ his compliments even though I know he just wants a favour.
  - It's not difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ people because most of us want to believe that everyone's intentions are good.
- taken in/distracted
  - They were \_\_\_\_\_ by us pretending to have a fight.
  - Everyone was \_\_\_\_\_ by the trick and no one saw the guy robbing the cash register.
- ground-breaking/sell-out
  - It was a \_\_\_\_\_ performance and changed the way people saw the character of Hamlet forever.
  - It was a \_\_\_\_\_ performance and impossible to get tickets for.
- letdown/flop
  - After the success of their first album, the mild response to their second one was a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - They were booked for five shows but the first was a total \_\_\_\_\_ so the rest were cancelled.
- bribery/shoplifting
  - \_\_\_\_\_ is common in the country, which is why if you have money you can get anything done.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ costs supermarkets and other stores a lot of money. For this reason shops have increased security and made it more difficult for people to take things.
- hacking/vandalism
  - People in public life have to be careful of journalists \_\_\_\_\_ into their email accounts and publishing private messages.
  - Examples of \_\_\_\_\_ are spraying graffiti on walls and breaking shop windows.
- narrow/shorten
  - We'll need to \_\_\_\_\_ the time it takes to get the produce from the farm to the supermarket.
  - Either I've put on weight or this door is very \_\_\_\_\_ – I had to squeeze through it.
- gory/gripping
  - I find the plot of all of his books so \_\_\_\_\_ that I can't put them down once I start reading.
  - I never expected a film about animals to be so \_\_\_\_\_ – I felt quite ill at the sight of so much blood.
- knocked out/knocked over
  - He got \_\_\_\_\_ when his head hit the ice; he had to be taken to hospital.
  - He got \_\_\_\_\_ during the football match but he picked himself up straightaway and carried on.



**4 A** Look at the underlined sounds in each group. Circle the word with the different sound.

- 1 rescue, touching, mugging
- 2 hype, height, gory
- 3 thought-provoking, now and then, ground-breaking
- 4 rave reviews, accuse, full of suspense
- 5 hacking, cause, fall for
- 6 hysterical, bribery, deceive

**B** ▶ R5.1 Listen and check. Listen again and repeat.

## GRAMMAR PAST MODALS OF DEDUCTION

**5 A** Read the two puzzles. What do you think the answers are? Write two ideas for each.

**PUZZLE 1** A fully booked 747 took off from Hong Kong, bound for London Heathrow. When it arrived in London, there were no passengers on board.

**PUZZLE 2** There were two men who were born on the same day in the same hospital. They had the same mother and the same last name. They looked exactly alike but they weren't twins.

**B** Complete the conversation about the puzzles with *must/might/could/can't/couldn't have* and the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

**A:** OK, so what about the plane puzzle?

**B:** The people <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (get) on the plane.

**A:** They did get on.

**B:** Then I'm not sure, but the plane <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (experience) a problem and everyone had to get off.

**A:** No, there was no problem with the plane. I'll give you a hint: it wasn't a non-stop flight.

**B:** Got it! The plane <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a stop on the way and all the passengers got off there.

**A:** That's right. So what about the second puzzle?

**B:** That can't be right, the woman <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (give) birth to twins!

**A:** No, as it says, they weren't twins.

**B:** Oh. Then they <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) the same birthday, it's impossible. Something's not right.

**A:** No: same birthday, same mother, same name.

**B:** I suppose there <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) two mothers who were sisters ...

**A:** No. Same mother. One mother.

**B:** This is only a possibility – they <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be born) a year apart, so they had the same birthday, but were one year apart.

**A:** No, it was the same year. Just minutes apart. But ... they had a sister.

**B:** Oh! So they <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) triplets!

## FUNCTION REPORTING AN INCIDENT

**6** Underline the correct alternatives.

**A:** So you let her in your door because she wanted a glass of water?

**B:** It just didn't <sup>1</sup>*cross/occur/seem* my mind that she was lying.

**A:** What, a complete stranger coming into your house?

**B:** She <sup>2</sup>*occurred/seemed/reminded* like a nice person.

**A:** Didn't you see her pick up your mobile?

**B:** Well it all happened <sup>3</sup>*such/with/so* fast, but maybe yes.

**A:** So you saw it but didn't pay attention?

**B:** Yes. It was only <sup>4</sup>*time/much/immediately* later that I realised what had happened.

**A:** How old was she, would you say?

**B:** She looked <sup>5</sup>*as/about/like* she was about forty years old.

**A:** Can you describe her appearance?

**B:** She <sup>6</sup>*reminded/remembered/looked* me of that actress ...

**A:** Which one?

**B:** I don't recall, my mind's gone <sup>7</sup>*blink/blind/blank*.

**A:** Did she introduce herself?

**B:** I didn't <sup>8</sup>*cross/grab/catch* her name. It was probably false anyway.

## GRAMMAR RELATIVE CLAUSES

**7** Complete the article with *who, which, whom, whose* or *when*.

Chinese superstar Lang Lang, <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ has inspired millions of young pianists and <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ performance was a highlight of the opening ceremony of the Beijing Olympics, was born in Shenyang in 1982. From the age of two, <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ his parents paid half a year's salary to buy him a piano, he was brought up to become the world's number one pianist. Lang Lang, <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ was naturally talented, won his first competition at five <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ he had to stand up to play the piano because his feet couldn't reach the pedals. His father, <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ gave up his job as a police officer, moved with him to Beijing for further studies, during <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ time father and son lived in poverty. Nowadays, he is a young man for <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ playing the piano and being a superstar both come naturally. Lang Lang, <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ work as a Unicef ambassador is dear to his heart, has recently launched a piano competition for children, <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is sure to be a great success.



## GRAMMAR PARTICIPLE CLAUSES

- 8 Complete the articles with the present or past participle of the verbs in the boxes.

spend use live find kill

## NUMBERS: people

5.5 litres: the amount of blood <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in the human body

13: the percentage of the world's population <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in deserts

25: the number of years <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ asleep if you live to seventy-five

70: the number of muscles <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to say a single word

30,000: the number of people <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ each year by cobras and vipers

suffer send make start arrive

## NUMBERS: machines

40: the percentage of spam email <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at addresses <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ with A, M, S, R or P

53: the percentage of people <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ from nomophobia [fear of being without their mobiles]

100: the number of cars <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ every minute

14,528: the number of text messages <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ by a Californian girl in one month

## VOCABULARY PLUS TWO-PART PHRASES

- 9 Correct the mistake in each two-part phrase.

*quiet*

- I only wanted peace and downs and what did I get? A screaming baby!
- Our relationship has its ups and bounds, but I'd say we're a solid couple.
- You have to weigh up the leaps and cons and then decide.
- There's some back and take in every friendship; don't be so selfish.
- I'm sick and ready of your complaints. Shut up or leave!
- We could go off and on about this forever, let's just end the conversation now.
- We only meet rough and then, but that's enough for me.
- Our business was going nowhere, now it's improving in leaps and don'ts.

## FUNCTION GIVING A TOUR

- 10A Add vowels to complete the words and phrases.

- h \_ \_ d \_ v \_ r
- w \_ rth
- m \_ d \_ ll \_ d
- \_ pp \_ r \_ ntly
- b \_ rnt
- m \_ y kn \_ w
- n \_ m \_ d
- r \_ tr \_ c \_
- b \_ l \_ \_ v \_
- s \_ pp \_ s \_ dly
- f \_ \_ nd \_ d
- st \_ ry g \_ \_ s

- 10B Use words and phrases a)–f) to complete part 1 of the tour and g)–k) to complete part 2.

## Tour of Kyoto, Japan, part 1

The original city of Kyoto was

<sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on the ancient Chinese capital Chang'an. Many buildings were <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ down in the 15th-century Onin War, but the city survived the Second World War.

As you <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, Kyoto is famous for its geisha.

<sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ women who train to be geisha today are not allowed to marry or have mobile phones. The two famous geisha districts, Gion and Pontocho, are well <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a visit, so let's <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ there later.

## Tour of Kyoto, Japan, part 2

Here we are at the Jishu shrine. See those two stones? The <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ that if you walk from one to the other, you will one day find true love.

And this is Kiyomizu-dera temple, which was <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in 798. It's <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ after a waterfall nearby. <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it or not, not one nail was used to build it.

Why don't we <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ our steps to the Manga Museum – <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ they have over 200,000 titles and we can read as many manga as we want.

## CHECK

Circle the correct option to complete the sentences.

- 1 Her performance was \_\_\_\_\_, but otherwise the play was rather disappointing.  
a) outstanding b) controversial c) touching
- 2 That's strange, I remember \_\_\_\_\_ this letter, but here it is in my bag.  
a) post b) posting c) to post
- 3 He was \_\_\_\_\_ for identity theft.  
a) suspected b) arrested c) saved
- 4 My best \_\_\_\_\_ lives in Paris, works in advertising.  
a) friend who b) friend, whose c) friend, who
- 5 There was so much \_\_\_\_\_ about the new show that it was sure to be a \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) hype, letdown b) rave reviews, flop  
c) ground-breaking, sell-out
- 6 The cinema burnt to the ground. Police think it was \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) hacking b) mugging c) arson
- 7 He \_\_\_\_\_ committed the murder. He wasn't even in the country at the time.  
a) may have b) can't have c) mustn't have
- 8 They'll need to \_\_\_\_\_ the canal if wider boats are going to sail through it.  
a) broaden b) lengthen c) deepen
- 9 It didn't \_\_\_\_\_ my mind to phone you.  
a) catch b) occur to c) cross
- 10 She was keen to \_\_\_\_\_ her husband of the crime.  
a) clear b) blame c) save
- 11 I can't believe you \_\_\_\_\_ that guy who was \_\_\_\_\_ a tourist.  
a) deceived, snatching b) were taken in, posing as  
c) were fooled by, pretending to be
- 12 That's the woman \_\_\_\_\_ son hit my son.  
a) who b) whose c) who's
- 13 Here we are at the president's childhood home. \_\_\_\_\_ it's got two floors and all the other houses around here have one.  
a) Interestingly b) Supposedly c) Apparently
- 14 I don't think it would have been a \_\_\_\_\_ if it hadn't created such a \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) must-see, mainstream b) sell-out, stir  
c) flop, ground-breaking
- 15 She took her umbrella, \_\_\_\_\_ that it would rain at some point during the day.  
a) expected b) expecting c) having expected
- 16 The monument was modelled \_\_\_\_\_ a well-known ancient Egyptian obelisk.  
a) by b) for c) on
- 17 People \_\_\_\_\_ redundant by the economic crisis were happy to get any kind of job.  
a) make b) made c) making
- 18 The protestors were \_\_\_\_\_ from marching through the city centre without permission.  
a) accused b) charged c) banned
- 19 I really didn't hear you ring the doorbell. I \_\_\_\_\_ been sleeping or maybe I was listening to music.  
a) could have b) can't have c) mightn't have
- 20 They seemed \_\_\_\_\_ if they were just having fun.  
a) to be b) like c) as
- 21 He \_\_\_\_\_ my wallet and \_\_\_\_\_ it for an identical one, which he gave back to me.  
a) grabbed, switched b) swapped, snatched  
c) fooled, posed
- 22 Her first relationship was the one thing \_\_\_\_\_ she thought more than anything else.  
a) which b) which about c) about which
- 23 My foot got \_\_\_\_\_ in a hole and I couldn't get it out.  
a) run over b) stuck c) locked out
- 24 Look, footprints! Someone \_\_\_\_\_ got here before us.  
a) could have b) might have c) must have
- 25 \_\_\_\_\_ all his life to build his dream house, he decided to travel instead.  
a) Having worked b) Working c) Worked
- 26 A search engine is a good \_\_\_\_\_ tool for checking spelling.  
a) off-and-on b) rough-and-ready  
c) now-and-then
- 27 We stopped on the way up the mountain \_\_\_\_\_ a break.  
a) to take b) taking c) take
- 28 The tablet's working and my headache's beginning \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) going b) go c) to go
- 29 The book was so \_\_\_\_\_ that I couldn't put it down.  
a) touching b) creepy c) fast-paced
- 30 My first girlfriend knew me \_\_\_\_\_ and no one has understood me as well since.  
a) through and through b) off and on  
c) ups and downs

RESULT /30



## UNIT 1 Recording 1

- 1 I wonder if you could introduce us to the director.
- 2 Do you mind me asking how much your camera cost?
- 3 Would you mind telling me what you do exactly?
- 4 I'd like to know whether it's really worth upgrading to the new smartphone.
- 5 Can you tell me which platform the Eurostar train leaves from?
- 6 What do you think he'll do when he discovers the mistake?

## UNIT 1 Recording 2

I = Interviewer, O = Owen Winters

- I: Do you have a dream? Is there something you've always wanted to do but somehow have never managed to? Well my guest today is the man who can make it all happen, for a price of course, Owen Winters, founder of Dreams Come True. Owen, welcome to the programme.
- O: Thank you for having me.
- I: So tell us, how does Dreams Come True work?
- O: OK, well it's quite simple. We help people make their lifelong dream come true – whatever it is.
- I: So if I, for instance, have dreamt of being a rock star since I was a teenager, you can help me with that.
- O: Yes, that's right. And in fact not long ago we had a client, a woman, who wanted exactly that.
- I: And you made her a rock star.
- O: Well, we couldn't give her talent ...
- I: Not that rock stars are always talented.
- O: Right, but in talking with her, we worked out that the image she had in her mind was doing a live concert to a huge audience. She wanted to experience the sensation of performing in front of thousands of screaming fans.
- I: And so how did you manage that?
- O: Well, to be honest, it's a bit like producing a scene in a film. In fact, that's my background, I worked as a production manager in the film business for many years, till just a few years ago.
- I: That's interesting.
- O: Yeah, so in this case, we needed to find a venue, an arena where rock concerts are held, a place we could rent out for an evening. Then we needed a backing band, a crew to set the whole thing up and ...
- I: And how about the thousands of screaming fans?
- O: Well, just like getting extras for a film, it's not that difficult.
- I: Did you pay the fans?

- O: Some of them, yes. We price up the different parts of the plan, write a budget, give the client the figure, and if they agree to the terms, we go ahead and do it.
- I: How much did this rock concert cost?
- O: I'm afraid I can't tell you. We don't reveal any financial details.
- I: Oh, OK. Well, what other dreams have you made come true recently?
- O: Let's see, we've just finished working with a client who wants to fly across the Atlantic Ocean on a supersonic aeroplane.
- I: But Concorde no longer flies.
- O: No, but we've just found a solution to that, using an air force plane. I can't tell you which air force.
- I: Another trade secret.
- O: Well, a military secret, actually. And another client wants to pilot a submarine. We've done the Normandy beach landings from the Second World War, with the client as general, we've done dining with a movie star, spending a night inside a pyramid and lots of make-up jobs.
- I: Make-up jobs?
- O: Yes, some people – all their life – have been curious about what it's like to be a man or a woman, or a celebrity ...
- I: And you make them up to look the way they want.
- O: That's right. We've recently done a job for a guy who wanted to look like Tom Cruise for a day. Our make-up artist did a brilliant job, but the guy couldn't wait for the day to end.
- I: Why was that?
- O: Too much attention. He couldn't go anywhere without getting asked for an autograph. We suggested that we provide bodyguards, but he didn't want to pay for that.
- I: And have you ever had to say no to a request?
- O: Hmm ... We never say no to a dream. But sometimes it does take time. One client wanted to fly in space, to be an astronaut. That wasn't possible back when she first requested it. But since then it's become possible for ordinary people to go into space, again for a price, and in fact she's blasting off on the next tourist flight.
- I: Incredible. So what do you think has been your most extraordinary request? And ...

## UNIT 1 Recording 3

- 1 a/b I'd like to enquire about a reservation I made.
- 2 a/b I was wondering if that would be possible.
- 3 a/b Would there be any chance of getting the same price for the following weekend?

- 4 a/b I'd be really grateful if you could make an exception.
- 5 a/b Would you mind telling me why it's so complicated to change?
- 6 a/b Do you mind me asking what your name is?
- 7 a/b Would you mind transferring me to your supervisor.

## UNIT 1 Recording 4

- A: Eden Gardens Hotel. How can I help you?
- B: Hi, I'd like to enquire about a reservation I made. The booking reference is 6714.
- A: OK. How can I help you?
- B: I need to change the dates to one week later. I was wondering if that would be possible and how much the change will cost.
- A: Let me just check. Ah, it's a two-for-one weekend deal.
- B: Yes. Would there be any chance of getting the same price for the following weekend?
- A: I'm not sure. Bear with me a minute.
- B: I'd be really grateful if you could make an exception.
- A: I need to ask my supervisor. Can you just hold on a minute? I'll just see.
- B: OK.
- A: Sorry to keep you. No, sorry, we can't do that.
- B: I've got one more question, if I'm not keeping you. Would you mind telling me why it's so complicated to change?
- A: Sorry, it's policy. Online special deals are non-refundable, non-transferable.
- B: Do you mind me asking what your name is?
- A: We aren't allowed to give our full names.
- B: In that case, would you mind transferring me to your supervisor.

## UNIT 2 Recording 1

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1 domestic  | 5 global     |
| 2 economic  | 6 industrial |
| 3 urban     | 7 ethical    |
| 4 political | 8 rural      |

## UNIT 2 Recording 2

- 1 She's done all her homework. She's been doing her homework since she got home from school.
- 2 I've sent twenty-five application letters this morning. I've been sending application letters all morning. I need a break!
- 3 Pete's called and left you a message. Pete's been calling you all evening. Is your mobile on?



- 4 I've read this magazine. Do you want to borrow it?  
I've been reading this magazine.  
Do you want to borrow it when I've finished?
- 5 Julia's gone to the gym – shall I ask her to call you back?  
Julia's been going to the gym and she's ten kilos lighter now.
- 6 The temperature has dropped to minus thirty.  
The temperature has been dropping all day.

## UNIT 2 Recording 3

### Speaker 1

I decided to do this because I hate it when people forget my name, like at school the teachers who don't know your name, they don't give you so much attention. So anyway, I looked on some websites to find out the best way to do it. Apparently there are two important things: first is that when you're introduced you really pay attention and look at the person and try to find a way to remember the name. For example, I recently met a woman called Keira and she had curly hair, so Keira, curly, sounds similar, you see what I mean. That was easy. Then, secondly, you need to repeat the name as often as possible, say it to yourself several times and use it when you're talking to the person. You just have to be careful that you don't sound really strange. Anyway, the result's been good. Somehow people seem friendlier and I feel a lot more confident about chatting to people. The only problem is someone told me it made people uncomfortable because they couldn't remember my name!

### Speaker 2

It was quite difficult at first. ... I mean you actually have to stop people trying to give you one. I didn't realise before I started how many are given out all the time. I thought this was a good thing to do because apparently it can take up to a thousand years for one to decay and about thirteen billion are given out each year in the UK alone. And it's not only the pollution but animals and fish can get caught in them. Anyway, I invested in two shopping bags and I've been using them for the past three months. The only problem is I keep forgetting to take them out of the house or I leave them in the car, which is very annoying. My solution has been to get one of those fold-up bags that you can carry in your pocket or bag. I've got all my friends to do the same and now our local shops are going to become a plastic-bag-free zone. At least that will make me remember to take a bag!

### Speaker 3

I thought this was a good one to try because everyone always looks so

bored or miserable, especially on public transport. So the next time I was sitting on a train and someone sat opposite me I looked up and gave them a big smile. They looked a bit surprised but smiled back at me, then buried their face in the newspaper. I got the impression they were a bit embarrassed. Anyway, I continued and kept smiling at all sorts of people during the day. To be honest, I got a mixed reaction, but the kids and older people seemed the friendliest. Oh and I found out later that one woman in the office thought I was flirting with her!

### Speaker 4

I decided to combine two of the ideas. I've always been hopeless at telling jokes, I'm sure it's not because I don't have a sense of humour. It's something about the timing. And I know that jokes are great for building relationships and good for me personally as I often have to give business presentations and a funny story really helps build rapport with the audience. One of the best things about doing this was that I asked all my friends to tell me their favourite jokes and we had lots of laugh-out-loud times together. And I'm getting better, though I did have one very embarrassing moment at work when I told my joke to my boss and he just stared at me like I was an idiot. You want to hear a joke? Something short? OK ... uh, What do cows do on Saturday night? They rent moooovies!

## UNIT 2 Recording 4

- 1 In the 2008 Olympics, Usain Bolt set three world records including the 100 metres.
- 2 If you stay in Spain for more than ninety days you need to apply for a resident's permit.
- 3 CCTV cameras have been successful, with a huge decrease in incidents of violence.
- 4 Police have launched a nationwide appeal for help to find a missing sixteen-year-old.
- 5 The National Gallery is planning to project gigantic images of Picasso paintings onto the outside of the building.
- 6 The Water for You scheme is a project to give hundreds of people access to clean water.
- 7 Researchers recorded South American river turtles talking to each other underwater.
- 8 The amount of ice at the South Pole has decreased significantly over the last ten years.
- 9 Students are permitted to work and study in this country.
- 10 Environmentalists appealed to supermarkets to reduce the amount of food waste.

## UNIT 2 Recording 5

- A: Do you think students should be allowed to use their phones in class?
- B: Yeah, I'm in favour of that. The way I see it is that students would be more motivated if they could use phones, maybe to make short movies or things like that.
- A: Mm, I'm not so sure, you know how kids are. It seems to me that they'd just start texting each other whenever they were bored.
- B: Mm, well, I agree to a certain extent. They would certainly need very strict rules, you know, about turning them on and off. But phones could be useful for things like practising languages or setting homework reminders.
- A: Yes, I suppose so, but what about bullying, you know, kids sending each other nasty messages? Or phones could be a target for thieves.
- B: Fair enough, but either of those things could happen after school.
- A: Hmm. I see your point, but I'm still not convinced. I think on balance it's better to keep them out of classes.
- B: I disagree. I think we should encourage them.

## UNIT 2 Recording 6

I'm in favour of that.  
I'm not so sure,  
It seems to me that  
I agree to a certain extent.  
I suppose so,  
Fair enough, but  
I see your point, but I'm  
I'm still not convinced.  
I disagree.

## UNIT 2 Recording 7

illegal, reasonable, unethical, disturbing, outrageous, irresponsible

## R1 Recording 1

- 1 authority, nervous, awkward
- 2 identify, crime, relieved
- 3 outrageous, information, decrease
- 4 witty, permit, disappointing
- 5 non-refundable, urban, frustrated

## R1 Recording 2

A group of rock stars are appealing for people to fund a new project aimed at preventing malaria. Recent medical research shows there is a dramatic decrease in the disease when malaria nets are provided for families. Fifty-two tourists have been rescued from the desert near the Step Pyramid in Egypt after temperatures reached 49 degrees Celsius – the highest level ever recorded in the area. The tourists



were stranded when their bus broke down. The group's tour operator has been arrested for failing to obtain a permit to conduct business in the area and has been ordered to pay a fine.

And in business, a number of European countries are planning to cut imports from the United States as trade tensions continue. The USA has recently increased taxes on produce coming from abroad to an all-time high.

## R1 Recording 3

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1 appealing | 6 recorded |
| 2 project   | 7 permit   |
| 3 research  | 8 fine     |
| 4 decrease  | 9 imports  |
| 5 desert    | 10 produce |

## UNIT 3 Recording 1

An eight-year-old boy has been rescued by an enterprising Bangkok firefighter. The boy from Thailand is autistic and had been feeling very nervous before his first day of school but initially he seemed to be OK. However, during the first lesson his teacher was explaining something to the class when she realised that the boy had climbed out of the window. 'He was sitting just outside the window with his legs swinging over the edge.'

The rescue services were called in when the boy's mother had also failed to get the boy down. Everyone was beginning to run out of ideas when one of the firefighters, Somchai Yoosabai, overheard the boy's mother talking about her son's love of superheroes. The quick-thinking fireman rushed back to the fire station and changed into his Spider-Man costume. (Until then, Mr Somchai had been using the costume to make school fire drills more interesting.) 'I told him "Spider-Man is here to rescue you. No monsters are going to attack you."' The sight brought a smile to the youngster's face and he immediately walked into his rescuer's arms.

## UNIT 3 Recording 2

Hello and welcome to *Arts Review*. In tonight's programme we look at a rather surprising answer to the question: How many stories exist? You might think that there are hundreds or thousands of different stories in literature, theatre and film but experts like to put the number rather lower, anything between one and twelve. Now, in a new book, Christopher Booker says that there are exactly seven basic 'plots' and every story in the world can fit into one of them. Before we review his book, here are the seven.

Plot one: Overcoming the monster.

In this story, the hero or heroine has to battle and defeat a monster. This could be a real monster, for example, Dracula,

or it could be a person, such as a villain in a James Bond film. The monster is defeated, the hero is victorious, the community is saved and order returns to the world. Most detective stories are actually variations on the theme of overcoming the monster.

Plot two: Rags to riches.

This idea is found in countless stories. It involves a very ordinary person or someone that everyone thinks is normal, nothing special. Then during the course of the story, it's shown that this person is in fact extraordinary. Just think of the story of Superman or any story of an ordinary person who ends up marrying someone rich.

Plot three: The quest.

This features a main character who travels a long distance, often with companions, in search of a treasure or to do a brave or noble act. At the end he or she succeeds and is rewarded in some way, often by keeping the treasure or sometimes by saving a community. Probably the best known example of this is *The Lord of the Rings*. Interestingly, it's also often the basis of many computer games.

Plot four: Voyage and return.

This typically tells the story of an ordinary person who is thrown into a completely strange and alien world, one that is outside their experience. Often they face dangers and difficulties and then have a thrilling escape back to their original situation. There was a TV series called *Lost* about people whose plane crashed on a desert island. That was a voyage and return story.

Plot five: Comedy.

This doesn't always mean humour although the story can be funny. It's more about a situation which is full of mistakes and mix-ups. The whole story gets more and more confused until at the end everything is sorted out and there's a happy ending.

Plot six: Tragedy.

As its name suggests, this plot never has a happy ending. It's about what terrible things can happen when someone tries to get power or go against the system. This person often has a weakness in their character and this weakness is the reason that everything ends badly. There are lots of examples in theatre, such as Romeo and Juliet, who fall in love although their families hate each other.

Plot seven: Rebirth.

This plot is about a person in a dark and difficult situation, maybe they've lost all their money or their job or they are in prison. Or perhaps he or she is unpopular or has an unpleasant personality. Then a series of events happens, often amazing events, and the situation or the person changes so that the character becomes a kind of hero, a very positive character.

So that's all seven. Before we go onto discuss these, there's an interesting quote from the American novelist, Kurt Vonnegut, who claimed ...

## UNIT 3 Recording 3

- 1 I wish I'd had more money.
- 2 I wish you'd worked harder at school.
- 3 I wish it would stop raining.
- 4 If only we'd told her.
- 5 If only we'd gone to the party.
- 6 If only you'd turned it off.

## UNIT 3 Recording 4

### Conversation 1

A: What did you think of the book?

B: Well, I'm not a big fan of travel books.

A: Oh, why's that?

B: I just couldn't get into all the description.

### Conversation 2

A: I hear Nick's enjoying his new school.

B: Yes, what he loves about it is that they do a lot of sport.

A: I didn't know he liked sport.

B: Oh, yeah. He's really into football at the moment.

### Conversation 3

A: Why don't you like barbecues?

B: I can't stand it when the meat isn't cooked properly.

## UNIT 3 Recording 5

- 1 Well, I'm not a big fan of travel books.
- 2 I just couldn't get into all the description.
- 3 Yes, what he loves about it is they do a lot of sport.
- 4 Oh, yeah. He's really into football at the moment.
- 5 I can't stand it when the meat isn't cooked properly.

## UNIT 4 Recording 1

### Speaker 1

I'm logged on twenty-four hours a day and each time a message comes in I check it ... I start getting frustrated if I don't get at least one an hour. Nowadays, I often don't answer the phone when my old friends call. Almost all my friends are people I've met online. The other day I met some people I knew from uni and I actually found it quite strange talking to them face to face because I'm much more used to interacting with people online. I'm a bit worried because my eyes are starting to hurt real bad ...

### Speaker 2

It's the quizzes and other applications that get me, like there's always a new questionnaire or test for something, you know, 'Do your friends think you're cool?'



or 'How long would you survive on a desert island?' Then there's Farmville, you know, where you have to manage a farm – I've been doing that for the last two months. Now I can't stop thinking about it, I lie in bed at night planning what I'll do when I log on next time. So of course, I'm not ...

### Speaker 3

When I was in high school I was completely hooked. I used to sit in lessons checking my texts and sometimes I told the teacher I was ill so I could go outside and log on to chat with friends. I would often skip lunch so I could carry on chatting. I spent more time online than I did studying so then my grades went down ...

### Speaker 4

I realised it was getting ridiculous when my daughter actually sent me a message through Facebook asking for help with her homework ... I mean, she was only in the next room! To be fair, she probably asked me in person first but I suppose I'd got so absorbed in the site that I didn't hear her. I'm also not taking proper care of myself – I have terrible headaches all the time. I know you're supposed to stop and give yourself a break regularly, but I never remember. Anyway, after that ...

### Speaker 5

I lost my job because of it. It started out that I'd just go onto the website during coffee breaks, but then I started to log on during work time. When a chat message came in, I couldn't resist. I'd stop what I was doing and join the conversation ... and my boss noticed that I was working less and less. He warned me a couple of times ... then he fired me. So then I ...

## UNIT 4 Recording 2

- 1 I used to love it.
- 2 I didn't use to discuss it.
- 3 We'd always eat together.
- 4 We'd always argue.
- 5 He's not used to it yet.
- 6 They'll be in the park.
- 7 I was always getting into trouble.
- 8 He'll be at the office.

## UNIT 4 Recording 3

Basically, the way it works is that you draw a grid of 5 by 5 squares on a piece of paper. There are two players, and the aim of the game is to complete the sequence 'SOS' in a straight line as many times as you can. So the first thing you do is one of you writes an 'S' or an 'O' in one of the squares. Then the other player writes an 'S' or an 'O' in another square. Whenever one of you completes an 'SOS', you get another turn and the point is not to let your partner succeed because what happens is that one player gets an 'SOS' and then blocks the other player. It's easy to lose track of who's winning so the key

thing is to keep score of who gets how many 'SOS's. Then after you've finished (once the grid is full), the winner is the player with the most 'SOS's.

## UNIT 4 Recording 4

- 1 Look up the idiom where?
- 2 I should see who?
- 3 You last spoke to her when?
- 4 I can use a question word to do what?
- 5 Who's waiting backstage?
- 6 The rain's doing what?
- 7 I'll find you where?
- 8 The what's too high?

## R2 Recording 1

- 1 biography, wind up, chill
- 2 pick up, inspiring, lyrics
- 3 brought up, autobiography, drop out
- 4 hilarious, focus on, grow up
- 5 wikipedia, recharge, delightful
- 6 get on, switch off, moving

## UNIT 5 Recording 1

- A:** Have you ever wondered why pregnant women don't tip over? Why woodpeckers don't get headaches? Or why, if you bend a piece of dry spaghetti, it often breaks into three or more pieces? Well, researchers have studied questions like these and some of these researchers have received the so-called Ig Nobel Prize for their work. And here to talk to us about the prize is Martha Anton. So Martha, what is the Ig Nobel Prize and what's your connection to it?
- B:** Well, the name of the prize is, of course, a play on words – it's not the Nobel, it's the Ig-Nobel, as in *ignoble* – and it's awarded to researchers and inventors for doing work which first makes you laugh, then makes you think.
- A:** So it's not a serious award.
- B:** Well, yes and no. Sometimes it's given to someone as a criticism of their work, sometimes as a point of humour, but in many cases the prize goes to someone for doing something that we might think is really silly or trivial, but which might lead to a major breakthrough. Some of the most important discoveries in history started with a joke. And at the awards ceremony, actual winners of the Nobel Prize present the Ig Nobel Prizes.
- A:** And what's your connection with the Ig Nobel Prize?
- B:** Besides the fact that I've always been a big fan of the prize and fascinated by the sort of people who win it, I'm hoping to win it myself.
- A:** I'd like to ask you about that in a minute. So what other research has won the Ig Nobel?

**B:** Well, two researchers in Newcastle won the Veterinary Medicine prize for showing that if you give a cow a name, and use the name, it will give more milk.

**A:** Fascinating.

**B:** And there have been a great many inventions, for example a teenager repellent.

**A:** A teenager repellent?

**B:** Yes, it's a device that makes an annoying noise that only teenagers can hear.

**A:** So adults can use it to keep teenagers away.

**B:** That's right.

**A:** I can't imagine why they'd want to do that.

**B:** Well, actually it was developed and it's been used by shopkeepers who want to stop teenagers hanging around outside their shops.

**A:** Really?

**B:** And then there's the alarm clock that runs away and hides so that people can't switch it off and go back to sleep.

**A:** Incredible!

**B:** That won the Ig Nobel for Economics, because it helps add more work hours to the day.

**A:** Naturally.

**B:** Oh yes, some years ago two Japanese researchers won the prize for their device called the Bow-Lingual. It translates from dog talk to human talk.

**A:** The Bow-Lingual. I get it.

**B:** And a Korean won for inventing a business suit that automatically perfumes itself.

**A:** So that a businessperson doesn't walk into a meeting smelling bad.

**B:** My favourite though was the washing machine for dogs and cats.

**A:** That would work perfectly with the Bow-Lingual. So what is your invention?

**B:** It's research actually, into whether it's better to walk or run in the rain. If you don't have an umbrella, that is.

**A:** Hm. Which way you get less wet, you mean.

**B:** Yes that's right.

**A:** And so which is better?

**B:** Ummm ... I'm afraid we haven't finished the research yet. Give me another six months of bad weather and we'll have the answer!

## UNIT 5 Recording 2

adjust to, damage, access, transform, effect, revolutionise, devastating, positive, enable, do harm to, adapt to

## UNIT 5 Recording 3

- A:** What do you think about simply writing the rule on a sign on the wall: 'English only'?



- B:** I think it's too simple. We'd ignore it.  
**C:** How do you feel about a fine system? You have to pay if you speak your language.  
**B:** That could be a problem. Not everyone has money for fines.  
**A:** Suppose we try a mother-tongue 'island'. A place in the room where you can go to speak your mother tongue if you really need to.  
**C:** That's not a bad idea.  
**B:** It wouldn't work. Everyone would be on the island!  
**A:** Would you consider having five-minute mother-tongue breaks in the middle of the lesson?  
**B:** I think we're on the wrong track here. It's either punishment or reward, nothing else works.  
**C:** How does giving a prize for using only English strike you? Like no homework? Or chocolate?  
**B:** Should we go for that?  
**A:** It'd be great if we could get more different nationalities in the group. Then we'd naturally speak English more.  
**B:** It wouldn't be my first choice. Where are we going to find these people?  
**C:** I'm torn between punishment and reward systems. Fines or prizes.  
**A:** Could we go for both?  
**B:** Yeah, let's go with that.

## UNIT 5 Recording 4

- |                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1 bizarre        | 5 rejected    |
| 2 predictable    | 6 dreadful    |
| 3 criticising    | 7 unrealistic |
| 4 coming up with | 8 brilliant   |

## UNIT 5 Recording 5

- To be honest, I thought your first suggestion was better.
- To put it bluntly, that's the worst idea I've heard today.
- Actually, I don't think that's a very practical idea.
- Frankly, it's just not going to work.
- I have to say, that's probably the only way.

## UNIT 6 Recording 1

### Speaker 1

I don't think there's any hard and fast rule, so for me, any time is the right time. I began when I was six, but then again I knew someone who started when they were almost fifty and she's still going strong now she's over seventy. You're never too old. I suppose the key is how much time you have to practise and your motivation. My parents let me try out different instruments and eventually I chose the violin. That's important too. I'm not sure my parents were too happy

about my choice, though! They had to put up with years of me sounding like a dying cat!

### Speaker 2

I think there's actually a legal minimum age in some countries, something like thirty-five, but in my opinion it should be at least fifty. Otherwise you just don't have enough experience to do it. But then of course you have to strike a balance between maturity and energy. You need to be able to react quickly to events and survive sometimes on very little sleep. So yes, someone in their fifties or maybe sixties could manage but no older than that.

### Speaker 3

I couldn't really give a number at all, since I can't state what's right for other people. I think it has to do with giving yourself enough time to get to know yourself and to understand your relationship together well enough so that neither of you will create an unhealthy environment for the child. Some people say there's never a right time, but I think there's definitely a wrong time – too soon.

### Speaker 4

Lots of people I know didn't know what they wanted to do with their life when they were twenty and they still don't know now they're over forty! But seriously, it's OK to decide young, if you have a real vocation, you know, you've always wanted to be a doctor or an engineer or something like that. But most of us don't have much idea when we leave school. So I reckon the best idea is to try out lots of things to see what you enjoy and develop lots of general skills. That worked for me. Most companies need staff who can get on with other people and can communicate their ideas clearly and who have reasonable computer skills and things like that.

## UNIT 6 Recording 2

unrealistic  
 unfamiliar, unpredictable  
 dissatisfied, illogical, irrelevant  
 impatient, immortal, unwilling, unhealthy  
 misbehave, insecure  
 misinterpret

## UNIT 6 Recording 3

1

- A:** Look at this picture. Isn't it time they banned 'size zero' models?  
**B:** Well, clothes do look quite good on them.  
**A:** But it sends a terrible message to young girls. Shouldn't they know it isn't normal to be so skinny?  
**B:** I've never really thought about it much.  
**A:** Well you should. Clearly, these images add to the pressure on young girls.  
**B:** Yeah, you're probably right.

2

- A:** Don't you think that they should use technology in football games?  
**B:** What, you mean instead of referees?  
**A:** Yeah, to make decisions. Anyone can see it would be fairer.  
**B:** But you need referees for all sorts of reasons.  
**A:** Yeah, but surely it's more important that decisions are correct.  
**B:** Hmm. I suppose you have a point.

## UNIT 6 Recording 4

- A:** Look at this picture. Isn't it time they banned 'size zero' models?  
**A:** But it sends a terrible message to young girls. Shouldn't they know it isn't normal to be so skinny?  
**A:** Well you should. Clearly, these images add to the pressure on young girls.  
**A:** Don't you think that they should use technology in football games?  
**A:** Yeah, to make decisions. Anyone can see it would be fairer.  
**A:** Yeah, but surely it's more important that decisions are correct.

## UNIT 6 Recording 5

1

- A:** Do you like me in this dress?  
**B:** I prefer the white one.  
**A:** So what you're saying is this one, which cost a fortune, looks terrible.  
**B:** No, I mean the white one makes you look slimmer.  
**A:** So, in other words, I look fat!  
**B:** No, no, you're twisting my words. I just meant that you look *even* slimmer in the white one.

2

- A:** Don't you think we should pay a decorator to do it?  
**B:** So basically you think I can't do it.  
**A:** I didn't mean that. It's just that it might be quicker and save us money.  
**B:** So what you mean is that I might mess it up.  
**A:** No, but you're a perfectionist and you know how long it takes you to do things.  
**B:** So you'd rather spend money and end up with a worse job!  
**A:** Not exactly ...

## UNIT 7 Recording 1

### Speaker 1

One of my favourite programmes when I was a kid was a very famous show called *Mister Benn*. I don't really remember that much about it, I know it was my favourite because my mother tells me it was. It was a cartoon and from what I remember it's about a guy who goes into a fancy clothes shop and he puts on a different outfit and then every time he



comes out of the clothes shop he's then transported to a world that corresponds with the outfit that he's wearing. I think I liked it because there was this innocent sense of adventure about it. I can't remember much about any individual episodes though.

### Speaker 2

The classic for Brits of my generation is *Blue Peter* – it's hard to underestimate its cultural impact. It was a kind of magazine programme for children. Basically, it involved two or three presenters (who also had a dog and a cat) involved in various tasks – demonstrating how to make toys or ornaments out of everyday household objects, short documentary trips to various places of interest and so on. Occasionally they held interviews with famous actors or performers of some sort. They would also bring in people who had some form of talent – musical, for example – to do live studio performances. Everyone wanted a 'Blue Peter badge', the special prize you could be awarded if you wrote in and they read your letter or if you won a competition or something similar – literally a badge of honour.

### Speaker 3

I liked this show *Grange Hill* because it was, I think, an accurate representation of what life in an English comprehensive school in a British city is like and it dealt with issues that were interesting for teen ... perhaps a bit younger than teenagers ... So like when you were from nine to twelve. I think it was a really good show because you're not yet old enough to watch adult TV but you're too old to watch kids' TV and it kind of bridges the gap between the two, and it deals with issues like drugs and sex in an unpatronising, non-condescending way. I suppose it was a kind of soap opera for kids, but quite a serious one.

### Speaker 4

When I was a teenager, my favourite show was *Monty Python*. It was different from any other kind of comedy show we'd had before. Instead of separate sketches with proper endings, in *Monty Python* they'd start a sketch and then suddenly stop it halfway or one sketch would morph into another. If a sketch was getting boring there'd be a news announcer coming on and saying 'and now for something completely different!' The links between the sketches would sometimes be cartoons, very surrealistic and weird cartoons of people exploding or strange machines. I suppose one of the main reasons I liked it was because my parents didn't understand it at all, so it was a kind of rebellion. After a *Monty Python* night we'd spend our entire lunch break at school going through it, remembering all the catchphrases and taking each sketch apart.

## UNIT 7 Recording 2

- 1 If I say something offensive, I'm often too stubborn to take it back.
- 2 If a homeless person knocked on my door in the middle of winter, I would put them up for the night.
- 3 Hard work brings out the best in me.
- 4 I come across as being more sociable than I really am.
- 5 If it turned out that my partner had lied to me, I would be disappointed in him.

## UNIT 7 Recording 3

- A:** This is totally outrageous. Your questions are very biased against the government. I've never heard such biased statements from a journalist before. Absolutely incredible.
- B:** Well, minister, you're the one who's always telling the people that we're getting richer when the cost of living is increasing and our wages are staying the same. How on earth do you justify that?
- A:** Look, there's no way I'd say that if the data didn't agree! Having said that, I do think we can do better to help ordinary people and so we're going to cut petrol tax.
- B:** That is a good idea, minister, but why are you introducing it now? Is it because the election is in two months?
- A:** That is so wrong! Are you suggesting that we're making up policies to gain votes?
- B:** To be honest minister, the amazing thing is that you're denying making policies to win votes.

## UNIT 7 Recording 4

- A:** This is totally outrageous.
- A:** Absolutely incredible.
- B:** you're the one who's always telling the people that we're getting richer
- B:** How on earth do you justify that?
- A:** Look, there's no way I'd say that if the data didn't agree!
- A:** Having said that, I do think we can do better to help ordinary people
- B:** That is a good idea, minister, but why are you introducing it now?
- A:** That is so wrong!
- B:** the amazing thing is that you're denying making policies to win votes.

## UNIT 8 Recording 1

### Part 1

Today, in the third of my lectures on human behaviour, I'm going to talk about the difference between the way people act when they're being watched – or think they're being watched – and how they act when they're unobserved. I'll be

describing a recent experiment conducted at Newcastle University. I'll be drawing conclusions from this experiment, to see what it teaches us about psychology and behaviour and finally, I'll be comparing it with other key research findings in the area.

So, what did the team at Newcastle set out to discover? They wanted to find out whether the simple belief that they were being watched would alter people's behaviour. To do this they made use of an 'honesty box' in a staff common room at the university. The idea behind the honesty box was that staff members would pay the correct amount for their coffee and tea. This honesty box had been in there for several years, so no one had any idea that an experiment was taking place.

What they did was to place a small poster at eye-level above the honesty box, listing the prices for the drinks. However, each week the poster alternated between different images of either flowers or of a pair of eyes looking straight at the observer. Here, you can see examples of the kind of pictures they used. At the end of each week the team monitored the amount of money that had been collected and compared this to the volume of milk that had been consumed. They found that people paid nearly three times as much money when the notice included a pair of eyes as when it included an image of flowers.

## UNIT 8 Recording 2

### Part 2

So what does this experiment tell us? Well, firstly it underlines something we already know – that our brains are hard-wired, are programmed, to respond to faces and eyes. It's important for people to know if they're being watched. Secondly, it shows that people are influenced if they think they're being watched; they behave less selfishly. The team were surprised by the significant difference in the findings. And what implications could this have for the future? Well, the team believe the idea could be applied to public situations where people have to decide whether to behave well or badly. One example would be for warnings for speed cameras. The team's previous studies show that drivers would react more positively to images of faces and eyes than to a picture of a camera. Another place where a picture of eyes could be placed is near a CCTV camera in town centres.

Now, before I go on to discuss other studies, does anyone have any questions?

## UNIT 8 Recording 3

- 1 What would you have done?
- 2 I wouldn't have done that.
- 3 If I'd known when you were coming, I would've met you at the station.



## UNIT 8 Recording 4

- A:** Is everything OK?
- B:** Actually, there's something I've been meaning to talk to you about.
- A:** Oh, is there a problem?
- B:** I don't want you to get the wrong idea, but ...
- A:** That sounds bad.
- B:** It's just that you often leave your mobile on.
- A:** I don't understand.
- B:** And it rings when you're not here and that's annoying.
- A:** But I need to keep it on in case my son phones.
- B:** Yes, but it's disturbing when people are trying to work.
- A:** It's important that he can get straight through to me.
- B:** I understand, but do you see where I'm coming from?
- A:** I suppose so.
- B:** Maybe you could set it to silent when you're not here.
- A:** What you mean just the 'vibrate' setting?
- B:** Yes, how would you feel about that?
- A:** OK, that sounds reasonable. I'll do that from now on. Sorry about that.
- B:** Thanks, I'd appreciate it.

## UNIT 8 Recording 5

- 1 Actually, there's something I've um been meaning to talk to you about.
- 2 Well, I don't want you to get the wrong idea, but ...
- 3 It's just that, you know, you often leave your mobile on ...
- 4 And it rings when you're not here and that's slightly annoying.
- 5 Yes, but it's a bit disturbing when people are trying to work.
- 6 I understand, but I mean, do you see where I'm coming from?
- 7 Maybe you could just set it to silent when you're not here.
- 8 Yes, how would you er feel about that?

## R4 Recording 1

- 1 biased, deny, promise
- 2 reality, threaten, sketch
- 3 serial, circulation, generosity
- 4 persuade, tabloid, sensationalism
- 5 focused, confrontational, control
- 6 sensible, aggressive, assess

## UNIT 9 Recording 1

- A:** ... and we're joined today by Alex Temple, a researcher in something called inattention blindness. Welcome to the show.
- B:** Thank you.

- A:** So for starters, can you tell us exactly what is 'inattention blindness'?
- B:** Well, the best way I can explain it is through some of the experiments that have been done. The most famous is the gorilla experiment. Subjects are shown a film of two groups throwing around a basketball, one group dressed in white, the other in dark clothes. And the viewer is told to count the number of times the team in white passes the ball. After about ten seconds, someone dressed in a gorilla suit walks out to the middle, faces the camera and then walks off. Most people watching the film don't notice the gorilla.
- A:** Don't notice it? That's hard to believe.
- B:** It seems that way till you do it. The point is that it's part of the nature of how we see, or don't see, when we pay attention.
- A:** You mean when we pay attention we see less.
- B:** When we pay attention we see what we're paying attention to. If I ask you to go out on Oxford Street and count the number of people with glasses, then when you come back I ask how many teenagers you saw with parrots on their shoulders, we'd get a similar result, even if there were several teenagers with parrots.
- A:** I suppose so. But why is this so important?

## UNIT 9 Recording 2

- B:** Well, when this happens in everyday life it can have significant consequences – a lot of accidents happen because of inattention blindness.
- A:** For example?
- B:** Well, for example, road accidents. Many accidents happen when a driver is talking on his or her mobile phone, using a hands-free set-up, which is legal. A driver in this situation actually misses a great deal of visual information, or is slower to process it.
- A:** A car stopping in front of them for instance?
- B:** Exactly. When there's a smooth flow of traffic and the driver is talking on the phone, some of their ability to process visual information is taken away. A car stops in front of them and it's like the gorilla – it's not what they're concentrating on, or looking for, and so they don't 'see' it. They also tend not to notice advertising hoardings by the road, for instance, even quite striking ones.
- A:** Maybe this explains why I miss signs when I'm driving.
- B:** Well, if you're driving in the USA and you're looking for a sign that says 'city centre' you might not notice the

one that says 'downtown', even if you're not talking on the phone. That's more about selective seeing, which is related to inattention blindness.

- A:** And how is this ... information used?
- B:** In lots of ways. We use simulators to demonstrate to trained pilots that they're less likely to notice something unusual on the airport runway than an untrained person – and this awareness helps them adjust how they use their visual perception and processing, and can prevent accidents.
- A:** Fascinating.
- B:** And in more common jobs, like a guard in a store. They expect a thief to try and hide what they're doing, so if someone steals something openly – just smiles, greets the guard and walks out of the store – they might not notice it. We do simulations to train guards not to be blinded by their expectations of how a thief behaves.
- A:** So it's really about training people not to be blind.
- B:** Yes. Though we've seen applications in design too. It's happened that a car driver driving at night tried to overtake another car and simply didn't see the motorcycle coming in the other direction – because the headlights didn't look like car headlights. So some motorcycle headlights have been made to look more like car headlights.
- A:** Any advice for our listeners? Is this something they can use in everyday life?
- B:** Sure. Aside from not talking on the phone while driving, I'd say that it's important to be aware of how you're looking at things. How your expectations of what you'll see actually blinds you to what's there.
- A:** So, expect the unexpected?
- B:** Yes, exactly.

## UNIT 9 Recording 3

- 1 It must have been you.
- 2 It couldn't have been me.
- 3 You may not have seen her.
- 4 They can't have been there.
- 5 We could have seen them.

## UNIT 9 Recording 4

- A:** I've just been robbed, on the underground, by a pickpocket.
- B:** What happened?
- A:** Well, this guy got on the train and he reminded me of that English football player ... wait, my mind's gone blank. Oh yeah, David Beckham.
- B:** David Beckham? Didn't you wonder why he was travelling on the underground?



- A:** It never occurred to me, no. Well, then everyone crowded round with their phonecams.
- B:** Typical!
- A:** I had to push my way past them and before I'd realised what was happening, my wallet was gone, right out of my bag.
- B:** Did you see or feel anyone take it?
- A:** No, in fact it was only a minute later that I realised they'd done it. It all happened so fast and I was in a hurry anyway.
- B:** So the David Beckham lookalike must have been a distraction.
- A:** Yeah, and he must have had someone working with him.
- B:** Well, the people with phonecams, maybe they ...
- A:** Do you think so? They seemed like students, but ...
- B:** Oh, definitely, it was a pickpocket gang. That's how they work.

## UNIT 9 Recording 5

- A:** It was a pretty bad accident. The front rim was completely twisted.
- B:** Rim?
- A:** The metal part of the wheel. And of course the spokes were broken.
- B:** Spokes?
- A:** The wires that go from the centre of the wheel to the rim. The chain guard got dented.
- B:** Chain guard?
- A:** The metal thing that covers the chain. One pedal broke off.
- B:** Pedal?
- A:** The thing you put your foot in. And the handlebar got bent.
- B:** Handlebar?
- A:** The thing you hold when you ride. And somehow the saddle got ripped.
- B:** Saddle?
- A:** The thing you sit on when you ride a bike.
- B:** Oh dear. Did you break any bones?
- A:** Bones? I cracked my skull.
- B:** Skull?
- A:** That's the big bone inside your head.

## UNIT 10 Recording 1

- 1 The people living on the other side of the river were trapped.
- 2 Anyone planning to go home early or wanting to take a break should let us know.
- 3 Walking out of the restaurant, I ran into my old boss coming in.
- 4 I used to work with the woman living next door.
- 5 I left the party quickly, not telling anyone that I was unwell.

- 6 Carrying a child under each arm, she ran out of the blazing building.
- 7 He jumped up, frightened by the loud bang, mistaking the door for a gun.
- 8 Walls painted white tend to attract more graffiti.

## UNIT 10 Recording 2

### Part 1

Hello everyone and thank you for coming. This evening I'm going to talk to you about how to take great photographs – the five secrets that every good photographer knows and uses. To be honest, these aren't really secrets, but hopefully, they'll be new to some of you and you'll find them useful.

OK, let's start with a photograph that includes some of the most common mistakes that amateurs make ... As you can see, this photo is a typical snapshot, the sort where someone got the woman to pose for the camera. Nothing against posing, though my preference is for more natural shots, but in any case there are several basic errors.

First of all, the picture-taker made sure the sun was behind him or her, to avoid sun going into the lens and that's good, but this way the subject has the sun blasting on her face, just a flat hard light. It also means that she can't open her eyes properly!

Secondly, the subject has been centred in the frame which leaves a lot of space at either side of her and creates a pretty boring and predictable image.

This leads me to the third common mistake that people make which concerns the background. We can see too much background here – the street scene with parked cars is distracting and unattractive.

Fourthly, overall there's too much space around the subject, the picture taker is either too far away or has used the wrong perspective, or both. Leaving too much space around the subject can make them appear smaller than you'd like and make objects in the background too important.

The final thing to check is the angle. Amateur photographers often stand higher than their subject which makes the subject look up – which is not the best angle to see a face, but ... actually, in this case, the photographer has got it right and positioned the camera in line with the subject's eyes.

You might think I'm being unfair, as this is just a quick snapshot. But I want you to see just how simple it is to make even your family snapshots consistently good photos.

## UNIT 10 Recording 3

### Part 2

OK, so here are the five key rules.

Rule number one: light from the side. So if you're outside, notice where the sun is shining from and position yourself so that it's to your left or right as you're facing your subject. If it's to your side, the subject won't have that flat hard light on them, but much more interesting shadows and shades, which give the image more depth and contour.

Rule number two is the rule of thirds. When you're framing a shot, divide the screen up into thirds both horizontally and vertically, and think of the four points where the lines intersect as centres. If your subject is a face, position the face at one of these four points. In other words, place your subject off-centre to add interest.

Which brings us to rule number three: think about your background. Avoid cluttered backgrounds which distract from the main focus of your photograph. This may mean positioning yourself in a particular way so, for example, there are trees or water or sky behind your subject and not cars. You can then use natural elements in the background to add texture and pattern.

Rule number four is related to this: take three steps closer to your subject. Try to fill the picture with your subject rather than leaving a lot of air around – unless the background or surroundings are important.

And rule number five is to adjust your height to your subject, so if they're much shorter, for example a child, kneel or crouch down. The lens and their eyes should be at about the same level. You'll be amazed at the difference.

So those are the five rules. Let's look at another photo of the same person and see how the rules work in practice.

## UNIT 10 Recording 4

- 1 It's well worth a visit
- 2 Let's head over to the
- 3 Supposedly, they had to interrupt
- 4 Believe it or not, it took
- 5 It was originally built as
- 6 Well, they were founded in
- 7 The story goes that he used

## R5 Recording 1

- 1 rescue, touching, mugging
- 2 hype, height, gory
- 3 thought-provoking, now and then, ground-breaking
- 4 rave reviews, accuse, full of suspense
- 5 hacking, cause, fall for
- 6 hysterical, bribery, deceive



## UNIT 1

### 1.1

#### 1A

b

#### B

2 c 3 a 4 b

#### C

- 1 F: Whether that's true is open to debate ...
- 2 T: a professor of journalism
- 3 F: This evening's event ... is free
- 4 T: Many of those attending are unwilling to talk about their worries to anyone but the therapists
- 5 F: Jones's advice hardly seems original, but Novac says he is satisfied.
- 6 T: That's actually why many therapists take part in the event, Jones tells us. 'This is a great source of new clients.'
- 7 F: Some of those seeking advice aren't entirely happy with the format. 'People near me can hear what I'm telling the therapist,' remarks Donna Bersch.
- 8 F: But with the loud buzz in the room that sometimes reaches the level of shouting ... they're lucky to be able to hear the person sitting opposite them!

#### D

- 2 brainchild
- 3 stumbled across
- 4 quandaries
- 5 phobias
- 6 succinct
- 7 position
- 8 eavesdrop

#### 2A

- 2 I never plan what I say, I'm very **spontaneous**
- 3 Fabio tends to keep himself **to** himself. I don't see much of him because
- 4 My colleague Bill is a real **people** person,
- a) and other people seem to think I'm quick and **witty** because of that.
- b) you can tell he enjoys company because he's such a good **laugh**.
- c) I think he's a real computer **geek** and he's not very practical.
- d) he arrives at work early and leaves early – he's a **morning** person and I'm not.

#### B

2 a 3 d 4 b

### 3

- 2 What are these headaches like?
- 3 What causes the headaches, do you think?
- 4 What are you thinking about at the moment?
- 5 Does that clock remind you of anything?
- 6 Why's/Why is that?
- 7 OK. How would you like to pay – in cash or by credit card?

#### 4A

- 2 asking how much your camera
- 3 telling me what you
- 4 whether it's/it is really
- 5 the Eurostar train leaves
- 6 think he'll/he will do

#### 5A

- 1 v – help
- 2 sp – read
- 3 ww – essay / paper / assignment
- 4 wo – I'm so worried
- 5 p – ! / . / ,
- 6 st – get / buy
- 7 gr – a group

### 1.2

#### 1A

- 2 over the moon
- 3 shaking
- 4 swallow me up
- 5 awkward
- 6 relieved
- 7 scared out of
- 8 fascinating
- 9 frustrated
- 10 impressed

#### B

- 1 shaking like a leaf
- 2 stomach's turning
- 3 fascinating
- 4 earth would swallow
- 5 frustrated
- 6 awkward
- 7 relieved
- 8 scared out of my wits
- 9 impressed
- 10 over the moon

#### C

Sentences 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

#### 2A

A 2 B 3 C 1

#### B

1 c 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 b

### C

- P:** 3 (becoming a rock star; dining with a movie star; looking like a celebrity/ Tom Cruise)
- T:** 3 (flying across the Atlantic on a supersonic aeroplane; piloting a submarine; flying in space/being an astronaut)
- H:** 2 (the Normandy beach landings from the Second World War; spending a night inside a pyramid)

### 3

- 1 have never managed
- 2 had, wanted
- 3 worked
- 4 did the concert cost, Has the cost gone
- 5 have you made
- 6 've/have just finished
- 7 requested
- 8 's/has become

### 4

- 1 Has (anyone) seen, left, went
- 2 Have (you) spoken, haven't asked
- 3 did (you) get back, 've/have (already) forgotten, were, happened
- 4 's/has had, stayed, had, has been

#### 5A

- 1 Anger
- 2 creativity
- 3 anxiety
- 4 embarrassment, embarrassment
- 5 disappointment
- 6 nervousness
- 7 amusement
- 8 awkwardness
- 9 frustration

### 1.3

#### 1

- 1 enrolment
- 2 Sign
- 3 in
- 4 refundable
- 5 trial
- 6 negotiable
- 7 for

#### 2

- 1 I'd like to enquire **about** ...
- 2 I was **wondering if** that ...
- 3 Would there be any **chance of getting** ...
- 4 I'd **be** really grateful **if** you could ...
- 5 Would **you** mind **telling** me ...
- 6 Do you **mind me** asking what **your name is?**
- 7 **Would** you mind **transferring** me to ...

## 3

- 1 a) P                      b) I
- 2 a) I                      b) P
- 3 a) I                      b) P
- 4 a) P                      b) I
- 5 a) I                      b) P
- 6 a) P                      b) I
- 7 a) P                      b) I

## 4A

- a) Would you mind transferring me.
- b) Sorry to be difficult, it's just that ...
- c) Bear with me a minute.
- d) I've got one more question, if I'm not keeping you.
- e) Sorry to keep you.
- f) Can you hold on a minute? I'll just see.

## B

Sentence b) is not used.

## UNIT 2

## 2.1

## 1A

- 1 domestic
- 2 economic
- 3 urban
- 4 political
- 5 global
- 6 industrial
- 7 ethical
- 8 rural

## B

- Oo            urban, global, rural  
 Ooo          ethical  
 oOo          domestic  
 oOoo        political, industrial  
 ooOo        economic

## 2A

- 1 a) ii                      b) i
- 2 a) i                        b) ii
- 3 a) ii                      b) i
- 4 a) ii                      b) i
- 5 a) ii                      b) i
- 6 a) ii                      b) i

## 3

- 1 've/have been travelling
- 2 've/have visited
- 3 've/have often wanted
- 4 've/have never known
- 5 've/have been exploring
- 6 've/have found
- 7 's/has been presenting
- 8 have told
- 9 has been
- 10 has recently appeared

## 4A

- 1 To make the world a better place by giving people ideas for small actions they can do as individuals
- 2 E: 1, 4, 6, 7            PS: 2, 3, 5, 8

## B

- 1 idea 5
- 2 idea 7
- 3 idea 2
- 4 ideas 3 and 8

## C

- 1 a) hates it when people forget her name; particularly at school – teachers don't give you as much attention if they don't know your name  
     b) makes people uncomfortable because they can't remember her name
- 2 a) pollution – it takes 1,000 years for a plastic bag to decay; animals and fish get caught in them  
     b) people keep trying to give her one; forgets to bring one with her
- 3 a) people look bored or miserable, especially on public transport  
     b) a colleague thought he was flirting
- 4 a) has always been bad at it and wants to use jokes to build relationships  
     b) has problem with timing in jokes; embarrassing moment when he told boss a joke – he didn't think it was funny

## 5A/C

- 1 records
- 2 permit
- 3 decrease
- 4 appeal
- 5 project
- 6 project
- 7 recorded
- 8 has decreased
- 9 are permitted
- 10 appealed

## 2.2

## 1B

a, d and f

## C

- a) 4    b) 3    c) 2    d) 6    e) 5

## D

- 2 a crash course
- 3 would-be
- 4 plausible
- 5 go grey
- 6 go undercover
- 7 blend in
- 8 confide in

## 2

- 1 identify
- 2 authorities
- 3 deterrent
- 4 store
- 5 access
- 6 monitors
- 7 prevention
- 8 keep track

## 3A

- 1 be painted
- 2 was invented, were thrown
- 3 has been invaded
- 4 is gradually being damaged / is being gradually damaged / has gradually been damaged / has been gradually damaged
- 5 being kissed
- 6 to be killed
- 7 be found
- 8 had already been explored

## B

Facts 2 and 7

## 4

- 1 are being taught
- 2 are sent
- 3 be used
- 4 decide
- 5 will be used
- 6 will allow
- 7 will be
- 8 will also send
- 9 was tested
- 10 be introduced

## 5A

- 1 I am writing with regard **to**
- 2 to **resolve** this matter
- 3 Please **contact** me within ten days
- 4 to **confirm** that this step has been taken
- 5 Thank you for your **prompt** attention to this matter
- 6 Yours **faithfully**

## 2.3

## 1A

- 1 I'm ~~not~~ in favour of that
- 2 I'm not ~~being~~ so sure
- 3 It seems ~~that~~ to me
- 4 I'm agree to a certain extent
- 5 I ~~can~~ suppose so
- 6 ~~is~~ fair enough, but
- 7 I see your point ~~is~~, but
- 8 I'm still not ~~so~~ convinced
- 9 I ~~don't~~ disagree

## 2

- 1 According to the latest research, profiles on social networking sites are accurate descriptions of people's personalities.
- 2 Toys like dolls, electric train sets and Lego are still enjoyed by kids.
- 3 In many countries, for instance Japan, fish is an important part of the diet.
- 4 Apparently, people are attracted to partners who look like them.
- 5 As far as I know, there is no evidence that coffee increases long-term memory.
- 6 'Soft' subjects such as Media studies, Sports studies and Dance are no longer being offered in some colleges.



## 3A

- 1 illegal
- 2 reasonable
- 3 unethical
- 4 disturbing
- 5 outrageous
- 6 irresponsible

## B

- Ooo reasonable  
oOo illegal, disturbing, outrageous  
oOoo unethical  
ooOoo irresponsible

## REVIEW 1

### 1

- 1 has wanted
- 2 moved
- 3 passed
- 4 've/have been trying
- 5 've/have finally done
- 6 've/have told
- 7 's/has become
- 8 's/has been
- 9 've/have been hoping
- 10 added
- 11 has spent
- 12 's/has passed

### 2

- 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 b 6 a  
7 b 8 a 9 a 10 b 11 b 12 a

### 3

- 1 a) people person b) down-to-earth
- 2 a) embarrassed b) awkward
- 3 a) relieved b) impressed
- 4 a) two-for-one b) non-refundable
- 5 a) keep track of b) monitor
- 6 a) deterrent b) identify
- 7 a) illegal b) unethical
- 8 a) outrageous b) disturbing
- 9 a) reasonable b) irresponsible

## 4A

- 1 nervous
- 2 relieved
- 3 decrease
- 4 disappointing
- 5 urban

## 5

- 1 Can you tell me what you were like ten years ago?
- 2 I'd be interested to know how you think you've changed.
- 3 Would you mind telling me what you have done that you are most proud of?
- 4 I wonder if/whether it's/it is possible for a person to stay the same all his life.
- 5 Could you tell me who has influenced you the most?
- 6 I was wondering if/whether you would/d like to direct a movie yourself.

## 6

- 1 anxiety
- 2 nervousness/nerves
- 3 frustration
- 4 disappointed
- 5 embarrassing
- 6 awkwardness

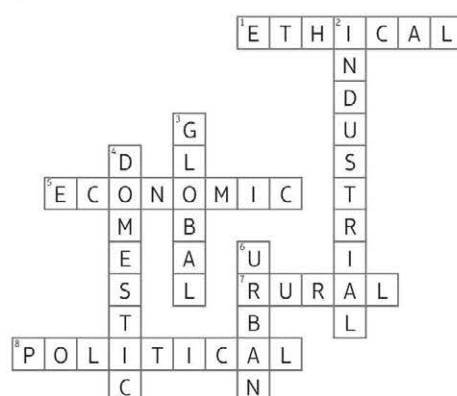
## 7A

- 1 help
- 2 was wondering/wonder
- 3 booking
- 4 Would you mind
- 5 Can you/Could you
- 6 appreciate it/be grateful

## B

- a) 5 b) 3 c) 6 d) 4 e) 1 f) 2

## 8



## 9A

- 1 appealing
- 2 project
- 3 research
- 4 decrease
- 5 desert
- 6 recorded
- 7 permit
- 8 fine
- 9 imports
- 10 produce

## C

- 1 appealing
- 2 project
- 3 research
- 4 decrease
- 5 desert
- 6 recorded
- 7 permit
- 8 fine
- 9 imports
- 10 produce

## 10

- 1 were asked
- 2 completed
- 3 scored
- 4 is/was thought
- 5 are filmed
- 6 are asked
- 7 have caused
- 8 be predicted
- 9 will face/are going to face
- 10 has been/was/is designed
- 11 were found
- 12 has been given

## 11

- 1 I see your point, but
- 2 I'm in favour of that
- 3 I don't agree with you
- 4 I agree to a certain extent, but
- 5 I'm still not convinced
- 6 I see what you mean
- 7 I'm not so sure

## CHECK

- 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 a 6 b 7 a 8 c  
9 a 10 b 11 b 12 c 13 c 14 a  
15 c 16 b 17 b 18 b 19 a 20 c  
21 a 22 b 23 b 24 b 25 a 26 c  
27 c 28 a 29 c 30 b

## UNIT 3

### 3.1

#### 1A

- 1 was fishing, saw
- 2 was teaching, became
- 3 'd known, read
- 4 noticed, had left
- 5 had been searching, was beginning
- 6 had been looking, heard
- 7 were, 'd been walking
- 8 'd driven, had taken

## B

- 1 F 2 B 3 D 4 D 5 F 6 B 7 F  
8 D

## 2

- 1 had been snowing
- 2 had the victim been coming
- 3 'd/had broken
- 4 had you made
- 5 'd/had been singing
- 6 Had she ever done
- 7 hadn't been planning
- 8 had been making

## 3A

- 1 had been feeling/had felt
- 2 seemed/had seemed
- 3 was explaining
- 4 realised
- 5 had climbed
- 6 was sitting
- 7 had also failed/also failed
- 8 was beginning/had begun
- 9 overheard
- 10 rushed
- 11 changed
- 12 had been using/had used
- 13 told
- 14 brought

## B

- /ə/ /ɪ/  
 1 had been feeling  
 2 seemed  
 /ə/  
 3 was explaining  
 4 realised  
 /ə/  
 5 had climbed  
 /ə/  
 6 was sitting  
 /ə/  
 7 had also failed  
 /ə/  
 8 was beginning  
 9 overheard  
 10 rushed  
 11 changed  
 /ə/ /ɪ/  
 12 had been using  
 13 told  
 14 brought

## 4A

- 1 b 2 f 3 a 4 d 5 c 6 g 7 e

## B

- 1 the quest  
 2 rags to riches  
 3 tragedy  
 4 overcoming the monster  
 5 comedy  
 6 voyage and return  
 7 rebirth

## 5

- 1 'nothing ventured, nothing gained'  
 2 every cloud has a silver lining  
 3 what goes around comes around  
 4 when in Rome, do as the Romans do  
 5 Once bitten, twice shy

## 6A

Saying 2

## B

## Possible answers

- 1 stupidly  
 2 naturally  
 3 immediately  
 4 loudly  
 5 eventually/finally  
 6 fortunately  
 7 finally/eventually  
 8 completely

## C

## Sample answer

There was a thirsty crow who found a water pot and **naturally** wanted to drink from it, but the water was at the bottom of the pot and the crow couldn't reach it. At first, he just stared at the pot dejectedly, trying to think of what to do. **Finally**, he thought of a clever plan: he would drop small stones into the pot one by one. **Eventually** the water rose to the top and the crow could drink it. And the moral of the story is 'Necessity is the mother of invention'.

## 3.2

## 1

- 2 hilarious  
 3 inspiring  
 4 poignant  
 5 intense  
 6 remarkable  
 7 incredible  
 8 moving

## 2A

- 1 'd/had worked  
 2 'd/had saved  
 3 hadn't begun  
 4 'd/had paid  
 5 hadn't got married  
 6 hadn't left  
 7 'd/had learnt  
 8 had travelled

## 3A

- 1 I'd had  
 2 you'd  
 3 it would stop  
 4 'd  
 5 'd gone  
 6 'd

## 4

- 1 would stop asking her  
 2 I were/was at home  
 3 only we didn't/did not owe  
 4 only they had told  
 5 you wouldn't/would not interrupt me  
 6 wish I'd/had thought  
 7 had kept  
 8 I could see something  
 9 only we had/'d more  
 10 you had/'d listened

## 5A

- 1 Janine is deaf; Dean is blind.  
 2 Janine: by using different strategies such as watching others' breathing, feeling vibrations from the music, asking other performers to signal to her  
 Dean: by using the sounds he hears to understand what is happening

## B

- 1 J 2 D 3 J 4 D 5 J 6 J

## C

- 1 closely-guarded  
 2 profoundly  
 3 develop  
 4 reveal  
 5 comprehensive  
 6 heightened

## 6A

- 1 up 2 up 3 up 4 out 5 on 6 by  
 7 up 8 on 9 away 10 for

## B

an underwater cameraman

## 3.3

## 1



## 2A/C

- 1 Well, I'm not a big fan of travel books.  
 2 I just couldn't get into all the description.  
 3 Yes, what he loves about it is that they do a lot of sport.  
 4 Oh, yeah. He's really into football at the moment.  
 5 I can't stand it when the meat isn't cooked properly.

## 3

- 1 was kicked out  
 2 is kicked out  
 3 worked  
 4 earns  
 5 met  
 6 was having  
 7 was waiting  
 8 fell  
 9 meets  
 10 delivers  
 11 has died  
 12 fall

## UNIT 4

## 4.1

## 1A

forgetting to eat, very bad headaches, sleep problems, dry or aching eyes

## B

- forgetting to eat 3  
 ignoring friends and family 1, 4  
 anxiety 1  
 lying to spend time doing it 3  
 very bad headaches 4  
 always thinking about doing it 2  
 sleep problems 2  
 problems with school or work 3, 5  
 dry or aching eyes 1  
 not taking proper breaks 4, 5



## C

- 1 I actually found it quite strange talking to **them** face **to face** because I'm much more used to interacting with people online.
- 2 It's the quizzes and other applications that **get** me, like there's always a new **questionnaire** or test for something.
- 3 I would often **skip** lunch so I could **carry on** chatting.
- 4 To be fair, she probably asked me **in person** first but I suppose I'd got so **absorbed** in the site that I didn't hear her.
- 5 When a chat message **came in**, I couldn't resist. I'd stop what I was doing and join the **conversation**.

## 2A

- 1 switch off
- 2 focus on
- 3 chill
- 4 recharge
- 5 wind up

## B

- 1 focus on
- 2 switch off
- 3 wind (me) up
- 4 chill
- 5 recharge

## 3

- 1 don't usually
- 2 used to, 'm usually
- 3 used to, always
- 4 often have, used to
- 5 take, stay
- 6 eat, starving
- 7 're always, used to be
- 8 used to, usually do
- 9 'll be, 's always gardening
- 10 would, try
- 11 having, use
- 12 would, 'll still argue

## 4

- 1 I used to love it.
- 2 I didn't use to discuss it.
- 3 We'd always eat together.
- 4 We'd always argue.
- 5 He's not used to it yet.
- 6 They'll be in the park.
- 7 I was always getting into trouble.
- 8 He'll be at the office.

## 5

- 1 used to live
- 2 didn't use to be
- 3 would put
- 4 used to think
- 5 didn't use to enjoy
- 6 are used to having/used to have
- 7 used to stay
- 8 would get up
- 9 used to work
- 10 used to live
- 11 would do
- 12 used to clean

## 6A

Positive side: 2, 3  
Negative side: 4

## B

- a) To start with,
- b) For instance,/For example,
- c) In addition to this,/Furthermore,
- d) For instance,/For example,
- e) as another example,
- f) At the same time,
- g) For instance,/For example,
- h) To sum up,

## 4.2

### 1A

- a) 3 b) 2 c) 1 d) 5 e) 4

## B

- 1 F: even sceptics have had to regard space tourism as an area with real commercial potential
- 2 T: a trip which included a week-long stay on the International Space Station
- 3 F: sub-orbital flights; Space tourists experience a few minutes of weightlessness and a view of the stars before heading back to earth and gliding in for a landing
- 4 NG: this isn't mentioned as the writer's opinion anywhere
- 5 T: to develop space hotels that can offer more luxurious surroundings than the International Space Station, which was designed for research purposes, not for tourists
- 6 NG: we know the Space Island Group's hotel rotates, but we don't know about the Galactic Suite space hotel
- 7 T: Space enthusiasts are optimistic ... and expect prices to keep coming down as competition gets more vicious
- 8 F: there's always the prospect, however unlikely, of getting a job in one of the space hotels

## C

- 1 the stuff of
- 2 sceptics
- 3 got on the case
- 4 sub-orbital
- 5 come up with
- 6 targeting
- 7 the going price
- 8 vicious

## 2

- 1 stunning
- 2 delightful
- 3 significant
- 4 perfect
- 5 superb
- 6 exceptional
- 7 classic
- 8 breathtaking

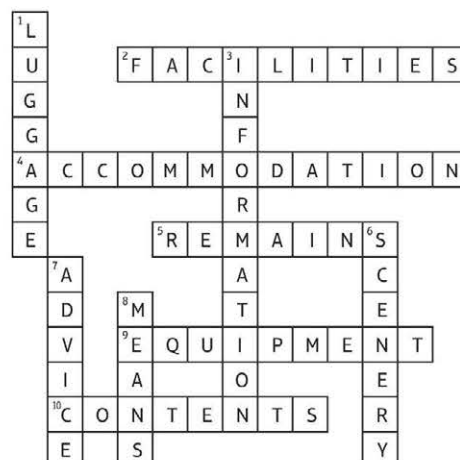
## 3

- 1 might take
- 2 will she do/is she going to do
- 3 's thinking of travelling
- 4 correct
- 5 'll postpone
- 6 'll phone and ask
- 7 leave
- 8 gets in
- 9 are we going to eat/are we eating/ will we eat
- 10 arrive

## 4

- 1 It's likely to be hot tomorrow.
- 2 Chris is hoping to find a new job.
- 3 I want to see Ingrid before I leave.
- 4 They're planning to meet at 3 o'clock tomorrow.
- 5 Barcelona will definitely win the championship.
- 6 Don't be late. We're due at the theatre at eight.
- 7 She's likely to get her work permit tomorrow.
- 8 I probably won't see you tomorrow.

## 5



## 4.3

### 1A

- 1 way
- 2 aim
- 3 the first thing
- 4 the point
- 5 what happens
- 6 key thing
- 7 after

## 2



## 3

- 1 know-how
- 2 a good sense of humour
- 3 in great shape
- 4 good with words
- 5 cool headed
- 6 inventive
- 7 sharpest mind
- 8 understands human nature

## 4A/C

- 1 Look up the idiom where?
- 2 I should see who?
- 3 You last spoke to her when?
- 4 I can use a question word to do what?
- 5 Who's waiting backstage?
- 6 The rain's doing what?
- 7 I'll find you where?
- 8 The what's too high?

## REVIEW 2

## 1

- 1 thought
- 2 'd/had been studying
- 3 were coming
- 4 were looking
- 5 had rained/had been raining
- 6 swam
- 7 were sharing
- 8 began
- 9 told
- 10 was going
- 11 realised
- 12 was going
- 13 had realised
- 14 was shaking
- 15 massaged
- 16 'd/had recovered

## 2

- 1 a) looked up to      b) grew up
- 2 a) inspiring      b) hilarious
- 3 a) pick (it) up      b) stands for
- 4 a) taken on      b) brought up
- 5 a) switched off      b) focused on
- 6 a) wound up      b) chilled
- 7 a) breathtaking      b) superb
- 8 a) classic      b) significant
- 9 a) stunning      b) perfect

## 3A

- 1 chill
- 2 inspiring
- 3 drop out
- 4 hilarious
- 5 delightful
- 6 moving

## 4

- 1 I wish I hadn't posted
- 2 I really wish I hadn't
- 3 If only I'd chosen
- 4 If only I hadn't sent it
- 5 Now I wish I'd/had deleted
- 6 If only I had
- 7 I wish he would phone and yell at me
- 8 If only I'd/had replied

## 5

- 2 I hate steak when it's rare – **what** I really don't like is the colour.
- 3 What I like **about** olives is their salty taste, particularly on pizzas.
- 4 I absolutely **can't** stand snails. The thought of them makes me feel sick.
- 5 I'm really keen **on** pasta, mainly because it's so quick to make.
- 6 I'm not **a** big fan of cheese. It's something about the smell.
- 7 Cherries are my favourite fruit – **the** thing I love about them is their taste.
- 8 I can't **get** into chocolate as it's often too sweet for me.

## 6

- 1 No, I'm used **to** it.
- 2 From the age of four I **would** dress up and sing for my parents.
- 3 That's right, but they **weren't** used to having children around ...
- 4 I **wasn't** used to sitting still for so long.
- 5 I used to **ask** the teacher what she wanted me to do and ...
- 6 No, I **didn't** use to enjoy the music classes ...
- 7 He used to **work** for ...
- 8 Yes, I **would** often think about being a famous singer and now it's happened.

## 7

- 1 Are (you) thinking
- 2 is likely
- 3 will use
- 4 will become
- 5 will break
- 6 won't keep
- 7 're/are going to lose/'ll/will lose
- 8 are (they) going to continue
- 9 're/are meeting
- 10 're/are going to talk
- 11 'm going to ask
- 12 's going to have

## 8

luggages  
contents  
outskirts  
means  
transports  
informations  
accommodations  
facilityies  
Electricitiesy  
remains  
views  
sceneriesy  
locals  
whereabouts

## 9

- 1 The first thing you do is **make** sure
- 2 **The point** is to make sure
- 3 **The key** thing is to ensure
- 4 What you **have** to do is
- 5 **Basically**, the way it works is that
- 6 After you've **removed**
- 7 What **it** happens next is

## CHECK

- 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 a 5 a 6 c 7 a  
8 b 9 a 10 b 11 c 12 b 13 a  
14 b 15 c 16 a 17 b 18 c 19 c  
20 b 21 c 22 b 23 a 24 b 25 a  
26 a 27 c 28 a 29 b 30 a

## UNIT 5

## 5.1

## 1A

- 1 C 2 A 3 B 4 D

## B

- 1 tip
- 2 three or more
- 3 teenagers
- 4 perfumes
- 5 dogs, cats

## C

- 1 c 2 b 3 a 4 b

## 2A

- 1 to 2 on 3 transform 4 to 5 to  
6 on 7 to 8 access 9 revolutionise

## B

- Oo damage, access  
oO transform, effect  
ooOoo revolutionise  
Oooo devastating  
oOo adjust to, enable, do harm to,  
adapt to  
Ooo positive

## 3

- 1 a 2 – 3 the 4 An 5 a 6 the  
7 the 8 the 9 – 10 – 11 a 12 –  
13 an 14 the 15 the

## 4

- Remember the saying 'necessity is the mother of ~~the~~ invention'. When ~~the~~ people need ~~the~~ things, sooner or later someone will come up with an idea to meet that need. It could be you!
- Watch people and notice their habits. How do they do ~~the~~ everyday activities, such as answering the phone, handling ~~the~~ money or ~~the~~ credit cards, eating and drinking? Is there a way that one of the activities could be made easier?
- When you have an idea, write it down. Draw a picture. Give it a name. This will help your mind work on the idea further.
- Don't talk to ~~the~~ negative people about your ideas. ~~The~~ motivation is important for ~~the~~ creativity and negative people can kill it.
- Talk to a friend about your ideas. Some of the most successful ideas emerge through ~~the~~ talking.



## 5

- 1 side
- 2 come
- 3 through
- 4 off
- 5 back
- 6 look
- 7 down

## 5.2

### 1B

- 1 Love
- 2 Discover
- 3 Health
- 4 Safety
- 5 Results
- 6 Cheap
- 7 Client
- 8 Deal
- 9 Best
- 10 Quality

### 2

- 1 go to great lengths
- 2 armchair explorers
- 3 dig deeper into their pockets
- 4 a big no-no
- 5 at the forefront
- 6 made consumers numb to

### 3

- 1 launching
- 2 entered
- 3 reduce
- 4 dominates
- 5 broke
- 6 set
- 7 promote
- 8 increased
- 9 endorse
- 10 raised
- 11 advertised
- 12 gap

### 4

- 1 unless we increase
- 2 closed later
- 3 Supposing we paid/pay
- 4 as long as we are/we're
- 5 were to accept
- 6 Let's suppose/say

### 5

- 1 didn't have, would definitely get
- 2 weren't/wasn't, wouldn't wear
- 3 will close/are going to close, comes forward
- 4 wasn't, would be
- 5 weren't/wasn't sitting, 'd/would be
- 6 'll/will buy, pass

### 6A

- a) is far less important for
- b) show an interesting contrast to
- c) place greater importance on
- d) there is almost no difference in
- e) affects both groups more or less equally
- f) there are significant differences in
- g) shows only/shows a slight variation

## B

- 1 e 2 d 3 g 4 f 5 c 6 b 7 a

## 5.3

### 1B

The speakers choose fines and prizes.

### C

- 1 How ~~much~~ do you feel about a fine system?
- 2 That could be a problem ~~idea~~.
- 3 I suppose we try
- 4 That's not a bad ~~terribly~~ idea.
- 5 It wouldn't ~~be~~ work.
- 6 Would you consider ~~about~~ having
- 7 I think we're ~~running~~ on the wrong track here.
- 8 How does giving a prize for using only English strike you ~~out~~?
- 9 Should we go ~~agree~~ for that?
- 10 It'd be great if we ~~should~~ could get
- 11 It wouldn't be my first ~~last~~ choice.
- 12 I'm torn ~~up~~ between punishment and reward systems.
- 13 let's go ~~out~~ with that.

### 2A

- 1 bizarre
- 2 predictable
- 3 criticising
- 4 coming up with
- 5 rejected
- 6 dreadful
- 7 unrealistic
- 8 brilliant

## B

- 1 oo 2 ooOoo 3 Oooo 4 ooOo  
5 ooOo 6 Oo 7 ooOo 8 Oo

### 3A

- 1 To be **honest**, I thought your first suggestion was better.
- 2 To put **it** bluntly, that's the worst idea I've heard today.
- 3 **Actually**, I don't think that's a very practical idea.
- 4 **Frankly**, it's just not going to work.
- 5 I have to **say**, that's probably the only solution.

## UNIT 6

### 6.1

### 1A

- 1 **Act** your age!
- 2 I'm continually surprised by her **maturity**.
- 3 Yes, he looks very young **for** his age.
- 4 We're visiting an **elderly** aunt of Simon's.
- 5 Careful – that could be seen as age **discrimination**.
- 6 Yes, she's definitely in her **prime**.
- 7 I agree – they've certainly **come** of age now.
- 8 Yeah, he's so **immature**.

## B

positive: 2, 3, 6, 7  
negative: 1, 5, 8  
neutral: 4

## 2

- 1 couldn't
- 2 had to
- 3 are able
- 4 should
- 5 let
- 6 managed to
- 7 can
- 8 are supposed to
- 9 made
- 10 being able to
- 11 wasn't allowed
- 12 don't have to

## 3

- 1 doesn't/don't have to provide
- 2 can't make kids eat
- 3 didn't manage to
- 4 let him go
- 5 won't be able to/'m not able to
- 6 aren't supposed to be

### 4B

Speaker 1: 5  
Speaker 2: 7  
Speaker 3: 3  
Speaker 4: 1

## C

- 1 any age
- 2 having enough time to practise, motivation, trying out different instruments before choosing
- 3 50–69
- 4 maturity and energy
- 5 so you don't create an unhealthy environment for the child
- 6 too soon/young
- 7 when the person has a particular vocation (for example, to be a doctor or an engineer)
- 8 try out lots of things to see what you enjoy and develop general skills

## D

- 1 c 2 e 3 b 4 d 5 a

### 5A

- 1 un: realistic, familiar, predictable, willing, healthy
- 2 im: patient, mortal
- 3 mis: behave, interpret
- 4 il: logical
- 5 ir: relevant
- 6 dis: satisfied
- 7 in: secure

## B

- 1 unrealistic
- 2 impatient
- 3 unwilling
- 4 unfamiliar
- 5 insecure
- 6 dissatisfied
- 7 misbehave
- 8 irrelevant
- 9 misinterpret
- 10 unhealthy

## C

- oooOo: unrealistic  
 ooOoo: unfamiliar, unpredictable  
 oOoo: dissatisfied, illogical, irrelevant  
 oOo: impatient, immortal, unwilling, unhealthy  
 ooO: misbehave, insecure  
 ooOo: misinterpret

## 6.2

## 1A

relationships, social networking, newspapers, radio (shopping is referred to indirectly: the drone is bringing new smart glasses which have been bought)

## B

- 1 e 2 a 3 f 4 b 5 c 6 d

## C

- 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 T 8 NG

## 2

- 1 will have started  
 2 won't be using  
 3 'll be attending  
 4 need  
 5 will involve  
 6 will have happened

## 3A

- 2 The average weight of an adult male will have gone down to seventy kilos.  
 3 Smoking will have been banned completely in all public areas.  
 4 Everyone will be driving flying cars.  
 5 Men and women will be wearing the same clothes.  
 6 Poverty and famine will have halved.

## 4

- 1 look forward to  
 2 have ups and downs  
 3 go nowhere  
 4 have mixed feelings  
 5 look on the bright  
 6 upbeat  
 7 dread  
 8 fill with despair

## 5A

- 1 for  
 2 about, 'd  
 3 get  
 4 be, let  
 5 to, All  
 6 know, rather

## B

- 1 happy to get  
 2 about  
 3 be great  
 4 a great time for  
 5 do you know  
 6 All the best  
 7 I'd love  
 8 I'd rather  
 9 let you know  
 10 I can't wait to

## 6.3

## 1A

- 1 credit card  
 2 staying, alone  
 3 ridden, scooter  
 4 wear  
 5 late, stay  
 6 run, business  
 7 owned  
 8 social networking  
 9 part-time  
 10 travelling solo  
 11 babysit  
 12 pierced

## 2A

- 1 Isn't ~~that~~ it time that they banned 'size zero' models? Shouldn't they ~~be knowing~~ **know** it isn't normal to be so skinny? Clearly ~~so~~, these images add to the pressure on young girls.  
 2 ~~Aren't you thinking~~ **Don't you think** that they should use technology in football games?  
~~No one can't~~ **Anyone can** see it would be fairer.  
 Yeah, but ~~sure~~ **surely** it's more important that decisions are correct.

## B

- 1 Look at this picture. Isn't it time that they banned 'size zero' models? But it sends a terrible message to young girls. Shouldn't they know, it isn't normal to be so skinny? Well you should. Clearly, these images add to the pressure on young girls.  
 2 Don't you think that they should use technology in football games? Yeah, to make decisions. Anyone can see it would be fairer.  
 Yeah, but surely it's more important that decisions are correct.

## 3A

- 1 So what you're saying is  
 So, in other words,  
 2 So basically you think  
 So what you mean is

## REVIEW 3

## 1

If you want to win at sports, choose **a** red shirt. Research by two scientists from **the** University of Durham shows that **a** team's chance of winning is influenced by **the** colour of their shirts. As part of their investigation, **the** scientists examined football results since **the** end of **the** Second World War and found **a** clear connection between wearing red and winning. Teams who wore **an** orange or yellow shirt had **the** worst records.

## 2

- 1 owned  
 2 wanted  
 3 were  
 4 call  
 5 will  
 6 is  
 7 wouldn't  
 8 buy  
 9 provided  
 10 can  
 11 Unless  
 12 If

## 3A

- 1 breakthrough  
 2 outlook  
 3 drawback/downside  
 4 breakdown  
 5 outcome  
 6 downside/drawback  
 7 trade-off

## B

- 1 fire  
 2 newspapers  
 3 e-readers/e-books  
 4 divorce or separation  
 5 an election  
 6 having a dog  
 7 cars, motorcycles or scooters

## 4

- 1 a) promote b) break into  
 2 a) advertise b) launch  
 3 a) reduced b) raised  
 4 a) set b) enter  
 5 a) increase b) gap  
 6 a) endorse b) dominated

## 5

- 1 for 2 about 3 would 4 consider  
 5 get 6 strike 7 track 8 feel 9 grab  
 10 torn 11 go

## 6

- 2 going nowhere  
 3 has their ups and downs  
 4 I'm dreading  
 5 looks forward to taking exams  
 6 Look on the bright side.

## 7

- 1 were able to/managed to  
 2 couldn't/weren't able to  
 3 able to  
 4 ought not/oughtn't  
 5 won't be able  
 6 allow you to/let you  
 7 have to/should  
 8 supposed to  
 9 allowed to  
 10 make

## 8

- 1 don't  
 2 Surely  
 3 Shouldn't  
 4 clearly  
 5 isn't  
 6 wouldn't



- 1 will have doubled
- 2 will be paying
- 3 will not/won't have saved
- 4 will be facing
- 5 will be discussing
- 6 will be living
- 7 won't be driving
- 8 will have
- 9 will have replaced
- 10 will be working

**B**

- 1 unhealthy
- 2 irrelevant
- 3 unwilling
- 4 dissatisfied
- 5 misinterpret
- 6 insecure
- 7 impatient
- 8 unrealistic
- 9 misbehave
- 10 unfamiliar

1 c 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 b 8 a  
9 a 10 c 11 c 12 c 13 a 14 b  
15 c 16 c 17 a 18 b 19 a 20 a  
21 b 22 b 23 b 24 a 25 b 26 a  
27 b 28 b 29 c 30 c

- 1 little
- 2 Several
- 3 little
- 4 A small number of
- 5 either of
- 6 A little
- 7 any
- 8 no

- 1 plenty of
- 2 several
- 3 quite a few
- 4 Another
- 5 a large number
- 6 each
- 7 a few
- 8 a good deal of
- 9 every
- 10 no

a) 2   b) 4   c) 1   d) 2   e) 3   f) 4  
g) 1   h) 3

**1 c   2 e   3 d   4 b   5 f   6 a**

**1** back   **2** up   **3** out   **4** across   **5** out

- 1 take it back
- 2 put them up
- 3 brings out
- 4 come across
- 5 turned out

- 1 brought out
- 2 put up
- 3 take (me) back
- 4 came across
- 5 turn out

an electronics shop  
a telephone company  
a newspaper  
a travel agency

**1 e   2 b   3 c   4 a   5 d**

- 1 had taken
- 2 didn't remember
- 3 had had
- 4 had
- 5 was breaking down
- 6 wanted
- 7 wouldn't
- 8 had to

- 1 why I'd/had come/gone there that day
- 2 I'd been trying to see him since the day before
- 3 me to close the door and have a seat
- 4 how he could help me
- 5 him (that) I had information that Mario the Snitch would be killed the next/following day
- 6 what made me think this might happen
- 7 not to waste time asking me questions
- 8 (me) if/whether he should let the cops know

- 1 to take part
- 2 to walk out
- 3 making
- 4 of lying
- 5 for doing
- 6 doing

- a) to say
- b) to change
- c) doing/having done
- d) to take on
- e) to pay
- f) to be

1 e   2 d   3 b   4 f   5 a   6 c

1 X 2 ✓ 3 X 4 ✓ 5 ✓ 6 X

- 1 Although most internet writers are amateurs, many give objective information.
- 2 While the internet is a convenient source of information, its accessibility can also mean that this information is not trustworthy.
- 3 Of course there's some inaccurate content. However, it's the reader's responsibility to identify the reliable information.
- 4 Despite the fact that wiki contributors try to give accurate information, too many don't use reliable sources. OR Despite wiki contributors trying to give ...
- 5 Although many amateur news websites look serious, that doesn't make them accurate.
- 6 While these weaknesses exist, there are reasons to trust much internet content as well.

## 7.3

## 1A

- 1 supplement
- 2 circulation
- 3 sensationalism
- 4 edition
- 5 biased
- 6 editorial page
- 7 feature
- 8 tabloid

## B

- 1 edition
- 2 sensationalism
- 3 supplement
- 4 tabloid
- 5 feature
- 6 biased
- 7 editorial page
- 8 circulation

## 2

- 2 You were the one who was asking about the celebrity news.
- 3 The incredible thing about the story is (that) all the people escaped safely.
- 4 The remarkable thing is that people want to buy this paper.
- 5 They're the ones who want to have a big magazine launch party, not us.
- 6 The ridiculous thing is the number of adverts.

## 3A

- 1 This is **totally** outrageous
- 2 **Absolutely incredible**
- 3 you're the one **who's** always telling the people that we're getting richer
- 4 **How** on earth do you justify that?
- 5 There's **no** way I'd say
- 6 I **do** think we can do better to help ordinary people
- 7 That **is** a good idea
- 8 That is so **wrong!**
- 9 the **amazing** thing is that

## B

- 1 This is totally outrageous.
- 2 Absolutely incredible.
- 3 you're the one who's always telling the people that we're getting richer
- 4 How on earth do you justify that?
- 5 there's no way I'd say
- 6 I do think we can do better to help ordinary people
- 7 That is a good idea,
- 8 That is so wrong!
- 9 the amazing thing is that

## 4A

- 2 Surely it's a hoax photo/photo hoax
- 3 Perhaps there's a nuclear plant upstream
- 4 It might be two fish
- 5 I'd imagine it's genuine but it's hard to say/It's hard to say but I'd imagine it's genuine

## B

- 1 b 2 e 3 c 4 d 5 a

## UNIT 8

## 8.1

## 1

- 1 goes against
- 2 stick to
- 3 assess
- 4 put off
- 5 postpone
- 6 betray
- 7 follow
- 8 evaluate
- 9 explore
- 10 arrive at
- 11 look into
- 12 reach

## 2

- 1 five-year long
- 2 twenty-storey high
- 3 long-running
- 4 record-breaking
- 5 time-consuming
- 6 15-metre high
- 7 third-time
- 8 life-changing

## 3A/B

The experiment was about how visual images affect people's behaviour in terms of honesty.

## C

- 1 are being watched
- 2 are unobserved
- 3 an experiment/a recent experiment
- 4 psychology
- 5 belief
- 6 an honesty box
- 7 changed/alternated the image
- 8 more honest
- 9 three times

## D

- 1 So that we know if we are being watched.
- 2 They behave less selfishly.
- 3 They were surprised.
- 4 A poster of faces or eyes could be used for the warnings about speed cameras instead of a picture of a camera.
- 5 Near CCTV cameras in town centres.

## 4A

In the first picture, the man is phoning from home; in the article, he phones from a payphone.  
In the second picture, the man is saving a boy; in the article, he saves another man.

## B

- 1 hadn't walked/hadn't been walking, wouldn't have seen
- 2 would/might/could have been traced, had/'d phoned
- 3 hadn't come forward, might never have found/would never have found
- 4 would/might have kept, hadn't spoken
- 5 would be, had/'d kept
- 6 wouldn't have fallen, hadn't collapsed
- 7 had stopped, wouldn't have leapt
- 8 would be, hadn't jumped
- 9 hadn't been, would have been killed
- 10 had had, wouldn't have jumped

## 5

- 1 would have asked him
- 2 wouldn't feel/be feeling sick (now)
- 3 might have won (the race)
- 4 could he have been
- 5 you wouldn't/would not be living
- 6 if you had/'d been paying
- 7 be lost if Angie had
- 8 would you have done

## 6A/B

- 1 What would you have done?  
/əv/  
2 I wouldn't have done that.  
/əv/  
3 If I'd known when you were coming,  
/əv/  
I would've met you at the station.

## 8.2

## 1B

- A soldier  
B freefaller  
C starfish  
D foetus  
E log  
F yearner

## C

- 1 Freefaller (although they tend to be gregarious, below the surface they are nervy and thin-skinned)
- 2 Starfish (they are good listeners)
- 3 Foetal (They are often shy)
- 4 Yearner (once they make a decision ... they are not going to change their mind)
- 5 Soldier (perfectionists who have high expectations of themselves and others)
- 6 Log (easy-going and likely to be popular; freefallers are also sociable but are not laid back)

## D

- 1 posture
- 2 (the) in-crowd
- 3 gullible
- 4 a fuss
- 5 gregarious
- 6 thin-skinned



## 2

- 1 control
- 2 equality
- 3 justice
- 4 fairness
- 5 aggression
- 6 greed
- 7 generosity
- 8 power

## 3A

- 1 daydreaming
- 2 to solve
- 3 tackling
- 4 taking
- 5 clearing
- 6 staying up
- 7 to need
- 8 being able
- 9 to require
- 10 sleeping

## B

Staying up all night **decreases** (not increases) the ability to hold new facts by forty percent.

## 4

- 2 Jake hates/hated not being able to play football because of his bad leg.
- 3 They have invited Guido to give a talk at the conference.
- 4 Olga has suggested going for a picnic.
- 5 What do you want me to do?
- 6 Would you mind telling us how old you are?
- 7 The firm didn't/doesn't expect to have to pay for the damage.
- 8 Can I persuade you to change your mind?
- 9 It isn't/It's not worth waiting any longer.

## 5A

- 1 That's something
- 2 I'm always
- 3 but
- 4 people think
- 5 think much of
- 6 I've wasted
- 7 get over

## C

- 1 Sara was late because ~~of~~ her alarm clock wasn't working properly.
- 2 You should make sure you put things in your calendar in order **to** remind you to do them.
- 3 Yuan went to the cinema early to **get** a good seat.
- 4 Take your car keys so that ~~as~~ you can drive if you get tired of walking.
- 5 You need to study hard so **as** to get a good test result./You need to study hard ~~so~~ to get a good test result.
- 6 Because I was late, I waited until the break to go into class so **as not** to upset the other students.
- 7 **In** order not to disturb the boss, don't talk outside that room – she's in an important meeting.
- 8 We use an online meeting maker so **as to** get agreement from everyone on the best time to meet.

## 8.3

### 1A

- 1 diplomatic
- 2 confrontational
- 3 sensible
- 4 supportive
- 5 collaborative
- 6 sensitive
- 7 unhelpful
- 8 assertive
- 9 focused
- 10 tactful
- 11 aggressive
- 12 direct

## B

positive: diplomatic, sensible, supportive, collaborative, assertive, focused, tactful  
negative: confrontational, unhelpful, aggressive  
either: sensitive, direct

## C

- 1 aggressive, confrontational
- 2 sensitive, supportive
- 3 direct
- 4 confrontational, aggressive
- 5 collaborative, sensible
- 6 assertive, direct
- 7 focused
- 8 unhelpful
- 9 assertive
- 10 sensible

## 2A

- 1 Actually, there's something I've been meaning to talk to you about.
- 2 I don't want you to get the wrong idea, but ...
- 3 It's just that (often) you (often) leave your mobile on.
- 4 And it rings when you're not here and that's annoying./And when you're not here it rings and that's annoying.
- 5 Yes, but it's disturbing when people are trying to work./Yes, but when people are trying to work, it's disturbing.
- 6 I understand, but do you see where I'm coming from?
- 7 Maybe you could set it to silent when you're not here./Maybe when you're not here you could set it to silent.
- 8 Yes, how would you feel about that?

## 3

- 1 Actually, there's something I've **um** been meaning to talk to you about.
- 2 **Well**, I don't want you to get the wrong idea, but ...
- 3 It's just that, **you know**, you often leave your mobile on ...
- 4 And it rings when you're not here and that's **slightly** annoying.
- 5 Yes, but it's **a bit** disturbing when people are trying to work.
- 6 I understand, but **I mean**, do you see where I'm coming from?
- 7 Maybe you could **just** set it to silent when you're not here.
- 8 Yes, how would you **er** feel about that?

## REVIEW 4

### 1A

- 1 plenty **of** fantastic views
- 2 a large **number** of walls
- 3 A Few flats with such excellent views
- 4 as quite a few **of** the rooms are on the lower ground floor
- 5 close to a large number of shops and several ~~of~~ clubs

## B

- 1 The big windows mean no privacy.
- 2 The flat is probably badly in need of repair.
- 3 The rooms are decorated in different styles (uniquely) and probably not to everyone's taste.
- 4 The flat's likely to be dark and damp.
- 5 There's likely to be too much noise.

## 2A

- 1 promise
- 2 reality
- 3 serial
- 4 tabloid
- 5 focused
- 6 aggressive

## 3

- 1 a) serial b) series
- 2 a) sitcom b) sketch show
- 3 a) greed b) equality
- 4 a) fairness b) power
- 5 a) explored b) reached
- 6 a) sticking to b) assessing
- 7 a) sensitive b) sensible
- 8 a) tactful b) assertive

## 4

- 1 take back
- 2 comes across
- 3 bringing out
- 4 put me up
- 5 turned out

## 5

- 1 told his father he wanted
- 2 wanted me to sing
- 3 hadn't given him my
- 4 why he didn't like
- 5 if/whether I had been/I'd been working/I was working
- 6 wouldn't be seeing Katya

## 6A

- 2 apologise 3 promise 4 threaten
- 5 accuse 6 offer 7 suggest 8 admit
- 9 deny 10 agree

## B

- 2 I apologised for causing any embarrassment.
- 3 We promised to reduce taxes if you voted for us.
- 4 She threatened to quit the show (unless she got more money).
- 5 He accused Leona of stealing his wallet.
- 6 They offered to share the information (with me/us).
- 7 She suggested taking a break (for a few minutes).
- 8 He admitted stealing €5,000 from the bank.
- 9 He denied ever having had cosmetic surgery.
- 10 She agreed to make a speech.

## 7

- 1 totally/absolutely/completely
- 2 is/was
- 3 way
- 4 on
- 5 really/absolutely
- 6 so
- 7 such
- 8 really
- 9 one
- 10 absolutely/really

## 8

- 1 would you have done things differently/would you do things differently
- 2 I wouldn't want/have wanted to change anything
- 3 If Angela and I hadn't/had not got married
- 4 we might/could/would/d still be together
- 5 if you were to give advice/giving advice
- 6 what would you say
- 7 If I started/were starting again
- 8 I still think I would/d choose

## 9

- 1 I'm sorry but I'll have to get back to work – this project is (very) time-consuming.
- 2 In a record-breaking race, Daniel Nduka wins the London marathon.
- 3 The company tries money-saving techniques then suddenly comes up with the funds when they're really needed.
- 4 I had to close my eyes before going into the brightly-lit room.
- 5 I had a five-month wait before I had the operation to repair my knee.

## 10

- 1 to look
- 2 to be
- 3 expressing
- 4 to do
- 5 Recognising
- 6 sit
- 7 processing
- 8 watching
- 9 to give
- 10 having

## 11

- 1 been meaning
- 2 hope you don't
- 3 the wrong
- 4 It's just that
- 5 Do you know/Do you see
- 6 would you feel

## CHECK

- 1 c 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 b 7 a 8 a
- 9 c 10 c 11 c 12 b 13 c 14 b
- 15 a 16 b 17 b 18 c 19 b 20 b
- 21 b 22 b 23 a 24 a 25 c 26 a
- 27 b 28 b 29 a 30 c

## UNIT 9

## 9.1

## 1B

- 1 c

## C

- a) 2 b) 5 c) 1, 4 d) not mentioned e) 3

## D

- 1 F 2 T 3 NG 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 NG
- 8 T

## 2A

- 1 a) to find b) studying
- 2 a) locking b) to lock
- 3 a) to learn b) speaking
- 4 a) meeting b) to do
- 5 a) to think b) thinking
- 6 a) to study b) travelling

## 3

- 1 to catch
- 2 chasing
- 3 standing
- 4 to be/being
- 5 to memorise
- 6 to pay
- 7 looking
- 8 picturing/to picture
- 9 to become
- 10 to say

## 4

A	M	C	A	I	P	R	I	C	B	C	H	L	S
R	V	A	N	D	A	L	I	S	M	K	Q	V	H
S	R	K	I	D	N	A	P	P	I	N	G	A	O
O	L	T	I	S	N	V	M	U	C	M	Q	Q	P
N	P	X	X	A	Z	Y	Q	H	L	N	K	R	L
Y	S	R	K	V	H	W	C	K	O	J	J	P	I
S	T	A	L	K	I	N	G	X	K	V	T	S	F
Q	Z	Z	W	A	V	P	S	H	E	C	V	D	T
W	L	P	S	V	S	H	A	C	K	I	N	G	I
L	V	Y	Y	L	C	B	R	I	B	E	R	Y	N
I	D	E	N	T	I	T	Y	T	H	E	F	T	G
C	O	U	N	T	E	R	F	E	I	T	I	N	G
W	Q	J	L	F	Q	B	M	U	G	G	I	N	G
F	U	Q	E	Y	J	R	N	V	P	W	C	O	H

## 5A

- 1 charged with
- 2 suspect 48-year-old Bill Haller of
- 3 accuse Haller of
- 4 rescue the driver from
- 5 thanked the prisoner for
- 6 saving the driver (who by coincidence is the mayor's son) from
- 7 cleared of
- 8 arrested another suspect for
- 9 apologised to Haller for
- 10 criticising the police for
- 11 blamed an ambitious senior police officer for

## 5B

Because he saved the mayor's son.

## 9.2

## 1A

- 1 greed 2 pride 3 curiosity 4 fear
- 5 sympathy

## B

- a) 4 b) 3 c) 5 d) 1 e) 2



## C

- 1 preys on
- 2 legitimate
- 3 plight
- 4 recognition
- 5 subtle
- 6 unverifiable
- 7 vulnerability
- 8 bogus

## 2B

- a) distract
- b) deceive
- c) pretend to be
- d) grab
- e) switch
- f) be taken in

## C

- a) 4 b) 2 c) 1 d) 5 e) 3 f) 6

## 3

- 1 can't have
- 2 must have
- 3 might have
- 4 could have/must have
- 5 can't have
- 6 must have
- 7 can't have

## 4

- 1 can't have got/reached/arrived/got back
- 2 must have met
- 3 might/could have dropped/lost
- 4 must have come/been downloaded/been copied
- 5 might have/could have cut/hurt
- 6 can't/couldn't have seen/met
- 7 must have eaten/taken/had
- 8 must have/could have/might have missed

## 5

- 1 It must have been you.
- 2 It couldn't have been me.
- 3 You may not have seen her.
- 4 They can't have been there.
- 5 We could have seen them.

## 6A

- 1 Make sure you check that there are no suspicious characters nearby.
- 2 Be particularly careful to cover your fingers when entering your PIN.
- 3 Try to count the money quickly.
- 4 Take time to put your card away safely.
- 5 Never turn around if someone tries to get your attention.
- 6 Always be aware of people nearby.

## 9.3

### 1A

- 1 he reminded me **of** that English football player
- 2 wait, my mind's gone **blank**.
- 3 It never **occurred to** me, no.
- 4 before I **(had) realised** what was happening, my wallet was gone
- 5 No, in fact **it was only** a minute later
- 6 It ~~was~~ all happened so fast
- 7 They seemed ~~to~~ like students/They **looked** like students

### 2

- 1 over 2 over 3 fire 4 out 5 down  
6 stuck 7 off 8 out

### 3A

- A rim
- B spokes
- C pedal
- D handlebar
- E saddle
- F chain guard

## UNIT 10

### 10.1

#### 1B

- a) 1, 6 b) 4, 7 c) 2, 5 d) 3

#### C

- 1 c 2 a 3 g 4 f 5 e 6 b 7 d

#### D

- 1 shriek 2 eerie 3 corrupted  
4 chattering 5 flash

#### 2

- 1 fast-paced
- 2 gory
- 3 hysterical
- 4 controversial
- 5 full of suspense
- 6 gripping
- 7 touching
- 8 creepy
- 9 outstanding
- 10 thought-provoking

#### 3A

- 1 When 2 that 3 where 4 which  
5 who 6 whose 7 which 8 when  
9 when 10 whose

#### B

- 2, 9

## 4

- 2 The biopic (which/that) I want to review today is *Raging Bull*, which is the story of a famous boxer.
- 3 Robert de Niro, who plays the part of Jake La Motta, is absolutely extraordinary.
- 4 The film was made at a time when most biopics were of heroic figures.
- 5 The film, which was directed by Martin Scorsese, is now recognised as a masterpiece.
- 6 De Niro became interested when he read the book on which the story is based.

## 5A

- 1 highly/widely
- 2 harshly/overwhelmingly/heavily
- 3 skilfully/sensitively
- 4 poignantly/convincingly

## B

- 1 a) widely praised  
b) highly praised
- 2 a) overwhelmingly criticised  
b) harshly/heavily criticised
- 3 a) skilfully directed  
b) sensitively directed
- 4 a) poignantly acted  
b) convincingly acted

### 10.2

#### 1A

- 1 A painting, not a statue, was damaged by a demolition ball.
- 2 The painting that was damaged was broken in two. It didn't get a hole in it. It was damaged because the glue holding the frame together wasn't strong enough, not because someone put an elbow through it.
- 3 The vase was broken into hundreds of pieces, not just two.

#### B

- 1 taking
- 2 tearing
- 3 shocked
- 4 pressed
- 5 walking
- 6 shattering
- 7 valued
- 8 embarrassed
- 9 employed
- 10 living
- 11 displayed
- 12 putting
- 13 being
- 14 used

## 2A

- 2 Anyone planning to go home early or wanting to take a break should let us know.
- 3 Walking out of the restaurant, I ran into my old boss coming in.
- 4 I used to work with the woman living next door.
- 5 I left the party quickly, not telling anyone that I was unwell.
- 6 Carrying a child under each arm, she ran out of the blazing building.
- 7 He jumped up, frightened by the loud bang, mistaking the door for a gun.
- 8 Walls painted white tend to attract more graffiti.

## 3

- 1 sell-out
- 2 alternative
- 3 rave reviews
- 4 ground-breaking
- 5 must-see
- 6 created a stir
- 7 mainstream
- 8 flop
- 9 hype
- 10 letdown

## 4B

- 1 c 2 b 3 a 4 b 5 c

## C

- 1 from the side
- 2 thirds each way, (four) intersecting points
- 3 interesting
- 4 (quite/fairly) close
- 5 height, the same level

## 5A

- 1 tired
- 2 downs
- 3 don'ts
- 4 bounds
- 5 quiet
- 6 on
- 7 then
- 8 ready
- 9 cons
- 10 take
- 11 through
- 12 on

## 10.3

## 1A/B

- 1 It's well worth a visit
- 2 Let's head over to the
- 3 Supposedly, they had to interrupt
- 4 Believe it or not, it took
- 5 It was originally built as
- 6 Well, they were founded in
- 7 The story goes that he used

## C

- a) 5 b) 4 c) 3 d) 7 e) 2 f) 1

## 2A

- 2 shortness, shorten
  - 3 narrowness, narrow
  - 4 width, widen
  - 5 breadth, broaden
  - 6 thickness, thicken
  - 7 depth, deepen
  - 8 height, heighten/raise\*
  - 9 largeness, enlarge
- \*When we make something higher we usually *raise* it. When feelings or effects become stronger, they are *heightened*.

## B

- 1 narrow
- 2 broaden
- 3 deepened
- 4 thickness, thicken
- 5 width, widen
- 6 length
- 7 lengthen
- 8 enlarge
- 9 high, height
- 10 shortened

## 3

- 1 There were **just under** 200 people at the party.
- 2 The homework should take you **roughly** an hour to do.
- 3 We'll be arriving at 4 o'clock or so **what?**
- 4 The renovations cost **upwards** of one million euros.
- 5 We're expecting somewhere **in the** region of a thousand people for the conference.

## REVIEW 5

## 1

- 1 to let
- 2 to turn
- 3 to turn, to look
- 4 meeting
- 5 talking, having
- 6 asking

## 2

- 1 apologised for not listening
- 2 blame the website for encouraging
- 3 be banned from showing
- 4 saved the plane from crashing
- 5 dreamt of being
- 6 is suspected of helping
- 7 criticising me for not helping

## 3

- |                      |                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1 a) fall for        | b) deceive      |
| 2 a) taken in        | b) distracted   |
| 3 a) ground-breaking | b) sell-out     |
| 4 a) letdown         | b) flop         |
| 5 a) Bribery         | b) Shoplifting  |
| 6 a) hacking         | b) vandalism    |
| 7 a) shorten         | b) narrow       |
| 8 a) gripping        | b) gory         |
| 9 a) knocked out     | b) knocked over |

## 4A

- 1 rescue
- 2 gory
- 3 thought-provoking
- 4 full of suspense
- 5 hacking
- 6 bribery

## 5B

- 1 can't/couldn't have got
- 2 might/could have experienced
- 3 must have made
- 4 must have given
- 5 can't/couldn't have had
- 6 could/might have been
- 7 could/might have been born
- 8 must have been

## 6

- 1 cross
- 2 seemed
- 3 so
- 4 much
- 5 like
- 6 reminded
- 7 blank
- 8 catch

## 7

- 1 who
- 2 whose
- 3 when
- 4 who
- 5 when
- 6 who
- 7 which
- 8 whom
- 9 whose
- 10 which

## 8

- 1 found
- 2 living
- 3 spent
- 4 used
- 5 killed
- 6 arriving
- 7 starting
- 8 suffering
- 9 made
- 10 sent

## 9

- 2 ups and downs
- 3 pros and cons
- 4 give and take
- 5 sick and tired
- 6 on and on
- 7 now and then
- 8 leaps and bounds



## 10A

- a) head over
- b) worth
- c) modelled
- d) Apparently
- e) burnt
- f) may know
- g) named
- h) retrace
- i) Believe
- j) supposedly
- k) founded
- l) story goes

## B

- 1 modelled
- 2 burnt
- 3 may know
- 4 Apparently
- 5 worth
- 6 head over
- 7 story goes
- 8 founded
- 9 named
- 10 Believe
- 11 retrace
- 12 supposedly

## CHECK

- 1 a 2 b 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 c 7 b  
8 a 9 c 10 a 11 c 12 b 13 a  
14 b 15 b 16 c 17 b 18 c 19 a  
20 c 21 a 22 c 23 b 24 c 25 a  
26 b 27 a 28 c 29 c 30 a